

# CHAPTER 9

## Discussion

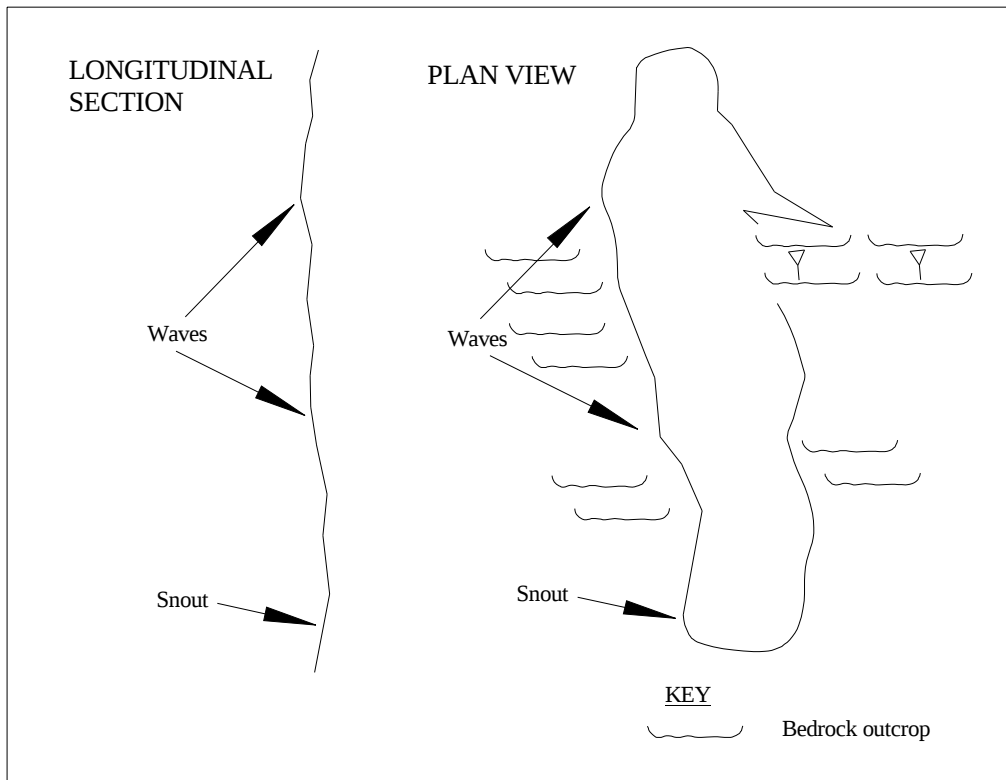
### 9.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter will analyse the results for the deposits, in terms of whether or not they comprise of characteristics typical to the process origins described in Chapter 2. The process origins will be discussed in terms of the hypotheses set out in Chapter 1, therefore debris flows, landslides, mudflows/mudslides, solifluction deposits and glacial deposits will be discussed for all sites. Fluvial deposits will only be referred to in the context of the Sehonghong sites, whilst rock glaciers and pronival ramparts will only be discussed in terms of the linear slope deposits. The morphological and sedimentological characteristics of the Drakensberg deposits will be compared to those for the various process mechanisms as described in Chapter 2. The feasibility of the proposed process origins will then be discussed for each individual deposit, based on the analysis of the results, in order to determine which processes formed the various Drakensberg features.

### 9.2 MORPHOLOGY

#### 9.2.1 Debris flows/avalanches

The morphology of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits do not resemble that of a debris flow, given that these types of deposits are known to develop distinctive features as discussed in section 2.1.2.2.1 (Figures 2.3, 5.2, 6.2 and 7.3). In contrast, although the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit also lacks the presence of an erosional scar and lateral levees, waves are apparent in plan view and in the longitudinal cross section (Figure 9.1), which may indicate a debris flow origin. The presence of bedrock exposures however, may have diverted flow, suggesting that the waves are not necessarily indicative of a debris flow. An example of a debris flow in the Drakensberg, measuring approximately 230 m in length and 135 m in width at its frontal lobe, is described by Grab (1999b) (Figure 9.2). Flow levees are also present at this site (Grab, 1999b); however, levees or lobate snouts are absent at the linear deposits described in this PhD project, which suggests that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits are not debris flows.



**Figure 9.1** A plan view and a longitudinal cross section of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit showing waves.



**Figure 9.2** Debris deposits in the Drakensberg at Njesuthi (photo by S. Grab).

The topographic setting at all linear deposit sites may be conducive to debris flow activity. The slope angle above the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit ranges between 29° and 45° (Figure 5.2; cross section E-E), whilst the slope angle above the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit ranges between 27° and 36° (Figure 6.2; cross section E-E). In addition, the slope angle above the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is 26° (Figure 6.20; cross section E-E), whereas it ranges between 18° and 35° above the Leqooa western deposit and 18° and 29° above the eastern deposit (Figure 7.3; cross sections I-I and J-J). These slope angles all fall within the range of those from which debris flows become initiated as described in section 2.1.2.2.1. In contrast, the slope angle above the Sehonghong south-facing deposits is a maximum of 15°, whilst that above the north-facing deposits reaches a maximum of 17° (Figure 8.2; cross section D-D and E-E), which reduces the likelihood of debris flow activity. There are no areas of colluvial infills above any of the deposits, neither does there appear to be a sufficient source area of material, which is problematic when considering a debris flow/avalanche origin. However, in mountainous regions, snowmelt within small drainage basins with steep slopes may encourage debris flow processes (Selby, 1993).

The triangular plan shape of debris avalanches as described in section 2.1.2.2.2 is not observed in the morphology of the deposits. However, the angle above the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley deposits is similar to threshold slope angles described for debris avalanches (Figures 5.2, 6.2, 6.20 and 7.3). The slope angle above the Sehonghong deposits reaches a maximum of 15° on the south-facing slope and 17° on the north-facing slope (Figure 8.2), suggesting that these slope angles would not be steep enough for the mobilization of debris avalanches.

### **9.2.2 Landslides**

There is an absence of a former erosion scar above all deposits, which is typical of landslides. However, the scar may have degraded since the deposits formed and may no longer be recognisable (Wilson, 2004). The lack of a failure scar should therefore not preclude the consideration of slope failure mechanisms in the formation of the deposits (Wilson, 2004). The length-width ratio for the various deposits ranges between 7:1 and 16:1 at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung slope deposit, between 4:1 and 10:1 at the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit, and between 5:1 and 21:1 at the Leqooa western deposit, which falls within the range of length-width ratios of landslides as described

in section 2.1.2.2.3. Alternatively, the length-width ratio of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit ranges between 7.5:1 and 3.5:1, whilst it ranges between 4:1 and 7:1 for the Leqooa eastern deposit, which does not fall within the typical range of landslides. The depth/length (D/L) ratio of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit is 7% at its greatest depth, whilst it is 8% at both Sekhokong deposits, which place them in the debris slides and avalanche category. In contrast, the D/L ratio of the Leqooa Valley deposits is 4%, which is just below the threshold of D/L ratios for debris slides and avalanches (Table 2.5).

The theory on hillslope orientation for landslide occurrence on equator-facing slopes does not concur with the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong, Leqooa Valley and Sehonghong south-facing deposits, given that these occur on south-facing slopes, which are pole-facing. Alternatively, the Sehonghong north-facing deposits are equator-facing and concur with the occurrence of landslides on these slopes. In contrast, the occurrence of landslides on south-facing slopes in the Western Cape as described in section 2.1.2.2.3 is consistent with the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong, Leqooa Valley and the Sehonghong south-facing deposits, however all these deposits lack the typical morphological attributes of landslides.

### **9.2.3 Mudflows/mudslides**

The Drakensberg deposits lack the typical morphological attributes of mudflows and mudslides described in section 2.1.2.2.4 (Figure 5.1, 6.1, 6.19, 7.1 and 7.2). The slope angle of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit is 25° at the head of the deposit, and levels off to 15° towards the toe of the deposit (Figure 5.2; cross section A-A), which is similar to the slope angle of the mudflow described by Corominas (1995) and falls within the range of typical mudflow slope angles (Brunsden, 1984). The Sekhokong Site 1 deposit tends to be fairly uniform (22° to 20°) (Figure 6.2; cross section A-A), whilst the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit has an average slope gradient of 22°, with steeper portions up to 36° (Figure 6.20; cross section A-A), all of which fall within the range of mudflows. In addition, the average slope angles at the Leqooa Valley deposits are 11° for the western deposit and 12° for the eastern deposit (Figure 7.3; cross sections A-A and E-E), which again fall within the range of gradients for mudflows and mudslides. In contrast, the clear lack of morphological characteristics at all sites, suggest that these deposits are unlikely to be of a mudflow or mudslide origin.

#### 9.2.4 Solifluction lobes

The linear deposits attain significantly greater heights and lengths than are typical of solifluction deposits as described in section 2.1.2.2.6. The linear deposits also vary considerably in terms of their morphology in comparison to solifluction lobes in the Drakensberg (Figure 9.3) and they occur on upper slope positions (Figures 5.2, 6.2, 6.20 and 7.3), which is not the preferred location for solifluction deposits. In addition, the slope above the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong deposits exceeds  $25^{\circ}$  (Figure 5.2, 6.2 and 6.20), which indicates that solifluction lobes would have been likely to collapse on such steep slopes. In contrast, the slope above the Leqooa Valley deposits ranges between  $18^{\circ}$  and  $22^{\circ}$  (Figure 7.3), which suggests that solifluction lobes would have survived. Stone-banked solifluction lobes have been identified in the Drakensberg on slope gradients between  $14^{\circ}$  to  $19^{\circ}$  (Grab, 2000b), which is again much gentler than the slope gradients recorded for the linear deposits.



**Figure 9.3** Solifluction lobes on the Drakensberg (photo by S. Grab).

The median length/tread width form ratio of solifluction lobes has been described as 0.7 (Hugenholtz and Lewkowicz, 2002). The median length/tread width ratio is 7.5 at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, 3.6 at Sekhokong Site 1, 3.5 at Sekhokong Site 2, 4.6 at the

Leqooa western deposit and 4.1 at the Leqooa eastern deposit, all of which are considerably larger than the length/tread width of solifluction lobes.

Although the Sehonghong deposits do not resemble solifluction lobes, they may however be a product of solifluction processes. Solifluction and gelifluction may occur on slopes of less than 5° and those of over 15° (French, 1996). This concurs with the slope angles on both the north- and south-facing slopes of the Sehohong River Valley (Figure 8.2). The slope gradient ranges between 1° and 15° on the south-facing slope (cross section D-D) and 1° and 17° on the north-facing slope (cross section E-E). Solifluction also causes valley sides to become convexo-concave in profile (Ballantyne and Harris, 1994) and mass wasting is believed to flatten and smooth the landscape (Ballantyne and Harris, 1994; French, 1996), which is observed on both the north- and south-facing slopes (Figure 8.2).

#### **9.2.5 Rock glaciers**

Although the linear deposits fall within the classification of tongue-shaped rock glaciers described in section 2.1.3 and display similar dimensions, there is a distinct lack of the typical attributes of a lobate form, or ridges and furrows at the surface (Figures 5.1, 6.1, 6.19, 7.1 and 7.2). Although slight ridges and furrows are observed at Sekhokong Site 2 (Figure 6.20; cross section A-A), relict rock glaciers are usually recognised in the field by their furrows and ridges, which are subdued, however still prominent (Barsch, 1996), which is not the case at the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit. According to Barsch (1996), relict rock glaciers should still be 5 m to 10 m thick at the front ridge, however the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is only 3 m high at its front (Figure 6.19 and 6.20). The absence of distinct ridges and furrows suggests that this deposit is unlikely to be of rock glacier origin.

#### **9.2.6 Pronival ramparts**

Although the linear deposits fall within the size dimensions of recorded pronival ramparts, the deposits occur linearly downslope and not parallel to the mountain slope. The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and the Leqooa eastern deposit have short proximal slopes and long distal slopes (Figure 5.2; cross section C-C, Figure 7.3; cross-sections F-F to H-H), which concurs with those for pronival ramparts as discussed in section 2.1.4. In contrast, the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit has a long proximal slope and a short

distal slope as indicated by cross-sections B-B and C-C (Figure 6.2), which does not concur with those of pronival ramparts. The Sekhokong Site 2 deposit has a longer eastern slope (Figure 6.20; cross sections B-B to D-D), which would correspond to pronival ramparts if this was the distal slope, however the topographic setting does not allow for the identification of whether the slope would be proximal or distal to a snow patch (Figure 6.20).

The slope angle at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits is significantly lower than the observed maximum distal slope angles of pronival ramparts, however this may be a result of slumping over time. The Sekhokong Site 2 deposit has an eastern slope angle of 35°, which corresponds with maximum distal slope angles for pronival ramparts, however its topographic setting does not allow for the differentiation between proximal and distal slopes. In contrast, suggestions that distal and proximal slope angles should be symmetrical and vary in terms of their cross sectional form (Behre, 1933; Harris, 1986; Shakesby *et al.*, 1995) is reflected in the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit where cross sections A-A and C-C (Figure 5.2) are almost symmetrical, with the exception of cross section B-B which has a steeper distal zone. The Leqooa western slope deposit tends to have symmetrical proximal and distal slopes as indicated by cross-sections B-B to D-D (Figure 7.3), which concurs with observations by Behre (1933).

### **9.2.7 Glacial moraines**

The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Leqooa eastern deposits have gentle proximal and steep distal slopes (Figure 5.2 and 7.3), which is similar to those observed for push moraines (section 2.1.5.1). However, push moraines are usually less than 10 m in height (Benn and Evans, 1998), which is considerably less than the recorded height for all linear deposits. Alternatively, the linear deposits fall within the size range of lateral moraines. The Sekhokong Site 1 deposit is the only one to show evidence of oversteepening on its proximal side (Figure 6.2), which has been described from a lateral moraine in Norway (Vere and Matthews, 1985), however the lower gradients and the lack of proximal slope oversteepening at the other sites could be attributed to slumping over time.

The secondary ridges observed at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley sites may indicate the extent of a former glacier (Figures 5.2, 6.2 and 7.3). Moraines may be deposited successively during progressive glacier recession and mark the extent of the former maximum extent of a glacial advance (Knight, 2004). Although these secondary ridges are smaller than the main ridge, which does not really reflect the advance of a glacier, this may however reflect the supply of material at the time of formation. The lack of gullying and dissection of these secondary ridges indicates that they are not a result of slumping of material from the main ridge and may represent glacier retreat.

#### **9.2.8 Fluvial deposits**

This section only applies to the Sehonghong deposits as the linear slope deposits were clearly not deposited under fluvial conditions. The Sehonghong deposits attain similar heights to depositional terraces described in section 2.1.6. The Sehonghong south-facing deposits also follow the river for approximately 2 km and the north-facing deposits follow the river for a few hundred metres (Figure 8.2), which is similar to river terraces. Parts of the same river terrace may become separated by tributary entrenchment or other geomorphic processes and therefore may be discontinuous along a valley (Harden, 2004), as indicated in Figure 9.4. Relict fluvial terraces can reflect the accumulation of alluvial sediment before subsequent downcutting (Lowe and Walker, 1997), which is believed to be the most appropriate theory for the Sehonghong deposits, given the thickness of material which has accumulated.

#### **9.2.9 Summary**

The most likely process origin for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa valley deposits based on their morphology alone is that of a glacial moraine. The Sekhokong Site 2 deposit does not possess all the typical attributes of any process origin, however based on morphology it is possible that this deposit may reflect debris flow processes. The morphology of the Sehonghong deposits resembles that of a fluvial terrace; however it is also possible that solifluction processes contributed to the accumulation of material.



**Figure 9.4** An example of where a potential terrace has been separated by tributary entrenchment on the south-facing slope at Sehonghong (photo by S. Mills).

### 9.3 PARTICLE SIZE ANALYSIS

#### 9.3.1 Debris flows/avalanches

The linear slope deposits, the Sehonghong south-facing deposits and the upper unit of the Sehonghong north-facing deposit consist of similar particle characteristics to debris flows (section 2.1.2.2.1). All deposits mainly contain <4% clay (Tables 5.1, 6.1, 6.12, 7.1, 7.4 and 8.1), which is typical of debris flows. Debris flow diamicts and gravels have been described as typically bimodal (Scott, 1971; Phillips and Davies, 1991), and mesokurtic (Owen, 1994). The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit displays a unimodal trend (Table 5.1), which is not characteristic of debris flows, however several of the particle size distributions within the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit are bimodal in trenches 1 and 3 (Table 6.1). The Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is also bimodal in trench 2 at 80 cm and 120 cm depth (Table 6.12) and the particle size characteristics at Leqooa Valley display several bimodal trends in trenches 1 and 3 of the western slope deposit and in trench 1 of the eastern slope deposit (Table 7.1 and 7.4). In addition, the sediment at Sehonghong Site 1 at 60 cm depth and site 2 at 120 cm depth is bimodal and the sediment at 45 cm depth is mesokurtic (Tables 8.1 and 8.2), which also concur with debris flow characteristics. The sediment within the exposure on the north-facing slope consists of coarse clasts within a fine-grained

matrix, which is poorly sorted and bimodal at 150 cm and 260 cm depth (Table 8.1), and reflect similar attributes to those of debris flow characteristics. The Sekhokong Site 2 deposit contains coarser material in trench 3, which would represent the snout of the deposit and which concurs with the coarse material within debris flows dominating flow heads (Takahashi, 1978, 1991; Johnson and Rodine, 1984).

### **9.3.2 Landslides and mudflows/mudslides**

The clay content within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 1 deposits is <3%, with the exception of Sekhokong Site 1 in trench 3, where clay content is <7% (Tables 5.1 and 6.1), whilst clay content within the Sekhokong Site 2, Leqooa Valley and Sehonghong deposits is generally <2% (Tables 6.12, 7.1, 7.4 and 8.1). This is significantly lower than the typical clay content within mudslides and landslides and there is no evidence of increased clay content with depth. Whilst clay fractions may have been eroded out through exfiltration processes, one would still expect a greater clay fraction at depth, if it were of a mudflow/mudslide origin.

### **9.3.3 Solifluction lobes**

The linear slope deposits particle size characteristics do not concur with typical attributes of solifluction lobes as described in section 2.1.2.2.6 (Tables 5.1, 6.1, 6.12, 7.1 and 7.4). Solifluction landforms typically involve a diamict consisting of fines and large particles up to about 10 cm to 20 cm. Although the linear deposits also involve a diamict, this unit is considerably larger (over 1 m in depth) (Figures 5.4 to 5.6; 6.3 to 6.5; 6.21 to 6.23; 7.4 to 7.9) and clasts excavated from within the deposits were also over 1 m in length, which is considerably larger than those found within solifluction deposits. Solifluction deposits also tend to contain low amounts of clay-sized particles (Elliot and Worsley, 1999), which concurs with the low clay content observed within the linear slope deposits (Tables 5.1, 6.1, 6.12, 7.1 and 7.4). It has also been suggested that silt and clay particles tend to be concentrated near the fronts of lobes (Benedict, 1970; Hugenholtz and Lewkowicz, 2002), however this is not observed within the linear slope deposits, in fact at Sekhokong Site 2 the opposite is true and coarse material has accumulated near the front of the deposit (Table 6.12). None of the deposits contain buried organic soil horizons, which occurs in almost all solifluction lobes (Benedict, 1976; Kinnard and Lewkowicz, 2006), suggesting that the linear slope deposits do not owe their origins to solifluction processes.

Although the Sehonghong deposits do not resemble solifluction lobes, they may nevertheless be a product of solifluction and gelifluction, associated with mass wasting. According to French (1996), gelifluction deposits include coarse talus, alluvial silt and clay and diamicts of glacial or periglacial origin, which are usually matrix-supported, with the matrix commonly consisting of clay, silt or silty sand. This is true of all units in the exposures, where the upper unit is predominantly coarse, whereas the lower units in the south-facing exposure are predominantly made up of sand and the lower units on the north-facing exposure are predominantly made up of silt (Table 8.1). Head deposits are believed to be a product of solifluction and tend to be poorly sorted and comprise of matrix supported diamicts (Ballantyne and Harris, 1994; French, 1996), which concurs with the sediments within the south-facing exposures and the sediment within the upper units of the north-facing exposure (Table 8.2).

#### **9.3.4 Rock glaciers**

The linear deposits do not possess the typical two layered system of relict rock glaciers described in section 2.1.2.2.6. A relict rock glacier described by Humlum (1998a) contains similar sized rock fragments to those excavated from the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 2 deposit, however there is a distinct lack of finer material present in all trenches at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and in trenches 1 and 3 at Sekhokong Site 2 (Tables 5.1 and 6.12). The Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa deposits on the other hand contain significant quantities of fine material (Tables 6.1, 7.1 and 7.4), but lack the two-layered structure of rock glaciers. The sediment within all linear deposits tends to be poorly sorted (Tables 5.2, 6.2, 6.13, 7.2 and 7.5), which agrees with rock glacier sorting. The sediment is also platykurtic in trenches 1 and 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Table 6.1), trench 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Table 6.13) and in the Leqooa western and eastern slope deposits (Tables 7.2 and 7.5), which have also been described as rock glacier attributes (Vere and Matthews, 1985).

#### **9.3.5 Pronival ramparts**

The sediment characteristics of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 2 deposits (Tables 5.1 and 6.12) are similar to those described in section 2.1.4 for pronival ramparts, which consist of coarse, clastic, poorly sorted sediments, with an absence of fines even at depth (Washburn, 1979; Linder and Marks, 1985; Ballantyne

and Kirkbride, 1986; Hall and Meiklejohn, 1997). In contrast, the Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits contain a significant amount of fine-grained material (Tables 6.1, 7.1 and 7.4), which has also been described from pronival ramparts (Shakesby *et al.*, 1995).

### **9.3.6 Glacial moraines**

The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 2 deposits possess the characteristics of supraglacial material described in section 2.1.5.2, consisting of coarse, unimodal sediment (Tables 5.1 and 6.12). In contrast, the Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits display several bimodal distributions and the presence of finer material (Tables 6.1, 7.1 and 7.4), which indicates that active processes may also have taken place at these sites. In terms of sorting, tills host a wider range of particle sizes than most other sediments, thus making them extremely poorly sorted (Gale and Hoare, 1991; Owen, 1994), which concurs with the poorly sorted material within the linear slope deposits (Tables 5.2, 6.2, 6.13, 7.2 and 7.5).

Bennett and Glasser (1996) describe flow tills as being poorly consolidated, which concurs with particle packing within the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit, which is primarily composed of unconsolidated material (Figures 6.21 to 6.23). Individual flow packages may also be visible in flow tills and sorted sand and silt layers, associated with reworking by meltwater are common (Bennett and Glasser, 1996). Successive flows of debris may also create upper washed horizons and interbeds of silt, sand or gravel (Benn and Evans, 1998). This may be observed within trench 3 (Figure 6.23), where a sandy unit is present at 130 cm depth, however this unit is very poorly sorted, as opposed to the well sorted layers described by Bennett and Glasser (1996).

The Sehonghong deposits are not regarded as moraines due to their morphology, however the fact that they may comprise till cannot be ruled out. Tills tend to be poorly sorted and lack stratification (Summerfield, 1991), which is observed in the sediment on the south-facing exposure (Figures 8.3 and 8.4), however deposits modified by meltwater may exhibit stratification, which is also observed in the sediment on the north-facing exposure (Figure 8.5). The coarse upper layer on the south-facing slope is predominantly composed of gravel and contains <11% fines (Table 8.1), which could indicate clasts that have been transported supraglacially.

Alternatively, the upper gravelly unit on the north-facing slope contains between 19% and 40% fines and is bimodal, which may indicate a certain degree of active transport. The lower sedimentary units on the south-facing exposure contain much finer particle sizes and are also bimodal, with the exception at 220 cm depth at Site 1, and may also infer a greater degree of active transport than in the upper unit. The compact massive sediment in the lower units of the Sehonghong Site 3 deposit is also similar to the structure of tills, as is the sharp non-gradational boundary between till units (Benn and Evans, 1998), which also occurs within the sedimentary units at this site (Figure 8.5).

#### **9.3.7 Fluvial deposits**

Site 1 and Site 2 along the south-facing exposure of the Sehonghong deposits contain >32% gravel in the lower unit and >54% gravel in the upper unit (Table 8.1), which suggests that if these were fluvially deposited sediments, they would have been deposited under a high energy environment, which is unlikely given that the length of the Sehonghong River and all its tributaries is only 9 km (Grab *et al.*, in prep). The upper units along the north-facing exposure are also unlikely to be of fluvial origin given the size of boulders present (Figure 8.5), which would have once again required a very high energy environment for deposition. These may however have been deposited by catastrophic flooding (Grab *et al.*, in prep). On the other hand, the lower units consist of >56% silt, with sand making up the remaining proportions (Table 8.1), which is similar to overbank deposits. These overbank sediments are normally stratified gravels, sands, silts and clays (Bridge, 2004). Stratification is not present within the lower units of the south-facing deposits (Figures 8.3 and 8.4); however alternating layers of sand and gravel occur within the north-facing deposit (Figure 8.5), which concurs with fluvial sediments.

#### **9.3.8 Summary**

All the linear deposits display attributes similar to the nature of debris flow deposits and pronival ramparts. The linear deposits also display the characteristics of till, however the particle size characteristics of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 2 and Leqooa eastern deposits are similar to supraglacial debris, whereas the Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits are similar to debris which has undergone active transport. The particle size analysis of the Sehonghong deposits indicates that solifluction and gelifluction processes may have contributed to the

formation of these deposits. In addition, both the south- and north-facing deposits display attributes similar to till, whilst the north-facing deposits may also be a result of fluvial deposition based on particle size analysis results.

## **9.4 CLAST FABRIC AND FABRIC EIGENVALUES**

### **9.4.1 Debris flows/avalanches**

Fabric characteristics for the various process origins are summarised in Table 2.3. There is some variability in the orientation of particles in the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong, Leqooa Valley and Sehonghong deposits (Figures 5.16, 6.9, 6.27, 7.16, 7.19 and 8.12), which corresponds with the range of debris flow orientations described in section 2.1.2.2.1. Clasts at all sites predominantly dip between 0° and 40° (Figures 5.16, 6.9, 6.27, 7.16, 7.19 and 8.12), which is similar to those described for debris flows (Innes, 1983; Boelhouwers *et al.*, 1998), however there is also a clustering around 60° in trench 2 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.9), which is much higher than typical debris flow dips. The suggestion that imbrication in debris flows may reflect the abundance of matrix and that clast-rich debris flows would show stronger imbrication (Bertran *et al.*, 1997) is observed within the linear slope deposits, where the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Figure 5.16), trench 2 of the Sekhokong Site 1 (Figure 6.9) and all trenches of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.27) display a more well-developed imbrication than trenches 1 and 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit and the Leqooa Valley deposits (Figures 7.16 and 7.19), which contain more fine-grained material.

Although the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit has moderate to high elongation values (0.57 to 0.77), it has very low isotropy values (0.06 to 0.14) (Figure 5.17). The Sekhokong Site 1 deposit has very low isotropy values (0.06 to 0.11) and low to moderate elongation values (0.47 to 0.66) (Figure 6.10), which again does not correspond to typical debris flow values (Table 2.3), however isotropy values for the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit range from 0.06 to 0.12, which is slightly lower than typical debris flow isotropy and elongation values are variable, ranging from 0.22 to 0.66 (Figure 6.28). The Leqooa Valley deposits both have very low isotropy values (0.03 to 0.05 for the western deposit and 0.02 to 0.05 for the eastern deposit), whilst elongation values are high (0.74 for the western deposit) and moderate to high (0.49 to 0.69 for the eastern deposit) (Figures 7.17 and 7.20), which again does not conform

to typical debris flow isotropy values (Table 2.3). Isotropy values are low at Sehonghong Sites 2 and 3 (0.03 to 0.05) (Figure 8.13), whilst isotropy within debris flows tends to be moderate. In contrast, elongation values obtained at Sites 2 and 3 fall within the range of debris flows. Isotropy and elongation values at Site 1 fall within the range for debris flows and the sediment falls within the debris flow envelope (Figure 8.13). None of the linear deposits fall within the debris flow envelope of Lawson (1979) and Mills (1984), with the exception of the sediment in trench 1 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit. In addition, the sediment within trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit fall very close to the debris flow envelopes (Figure 6.29).

#### **9.4.2 Landslides**

The parallel or transverse clast orientations observed within landslides (Table 2.3) corresponds to the clast orientations within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit, which are parallel to movement in the case of the sediment in trenches 1 and 3, and transverse to movement in trench 2 (Figure 5.16). Although clasts in trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit are predominantly oriented transverse to the deposit, clast orientation within trenches 1 and 2 is fairly random (Figure 6.9), which does not concur with clast orientation within landslides (Table 2.3). Clasts within trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit are oriented downslope, which is similar to orientations observed within landslides, however clasts within trenches 1 and 2 are randomly oriented (Figure 6.27) and therefore do not concur with landslide clast orientations. The Leqooa Valley western slope deposit displays similar clast orientations to landslides in the downslope direction of clasts in trenches 1 and 2 and slightly transverse orientations in trench 3 (Figure 7.16). In contrast, clast orientations in trenches 2 and 3 of the eastern deposit are random (Figure 7.19).

#### **9.4.3 Mudflows/mudslides**

The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit shows preferred parallel or transverse orientation (Figure 5.16), whilst the Sehonghong Site 3 deposit displays transverse orientations to the hillslope, both of which do not concur with the lack of preferred orientation typically found within mudflow deposits (Table 2.3). In contrast, both the Sekhokong Site 1 and Site 2 deposits display random orientations in trenches 1 and 2 and transverse orientations in trench 3 (Figures 6.9 and 6.27), which is similar to mudflow

fabrics. Clast orientation within the Leqooa Valley western deposit tends to be downslope or transverse to the deposit (Figure 7.16), which does not correspond to the typical random fabrics in mudflows. Alternatively, clast orientation in trenches 2 and 3 of the eastern deposit are random (Figure 7.19) and concur with typical mudflow fabrics. Clasts at Sites 1 and 2 of the Sehonghong deposits are also randomly oriented (Figure 8.12), which is also similar to typical mudflow fabrics.

#### 9.4.4 Solifluction lobes

Clast orientation tends to be in the direction of the slope in trenches 1 and 3 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit, in trench 1 of the Leqooa western deposit and at Sehonghong Site 1, which may indicate solifluction processes (Figures 5.16, 7.16 and 8.12). A transverse orientation towards the lower part of the deposit is observed at Sekhokong Site 2 (Figure 6.27) and at the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.16) as suggested for solifluction lobes by Benedict (1976). In contrast, clast dips are higher within the linear slope deposits than typical solifluction clast dips, with the exception of the Leqooa western deposit, where clasts tend to dip  $<30^\circ$  (Figure 7.16).

Eigenvalues  $S_1$  range between 0.811 and 0.971 for solifluction lobes in Alaska (Nelson, 1985) (Table 2.3), which is significantly higher than those recorded for all deposits (Figures 5.16, 6.9, 6.27, 7.16, 7.19 and 8.12). According to Millar (2005), eigenvalue  $S_1$  results may vary between 0.422 and 0.804 within solifluction deposits, which concurs with the  $S_1$  values for all the deposits in this research which range between 0.526 in trench 1 at Sekhokong Site 1 and 0.813 in trench 1 of the Leqooa western deposit. Gelifluction lobe fabrics have low isotropy values (0.044 to 0.165) and a very wide range of elongation values (0.167 to 0.671) (Benn, 1994a). Isotropy and elongation values for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Figure 5.17), Sekhokong Sites 1 and 2 (Figure 6.10 and 6.28) and Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2 (Figure 8.13) concur with the isotropy and elongation values of gelifluction deposits. In contrast, isotropy values for the Leqooa Valley deposits are slightly lower than typical values for gelifluction lobes, whereas elongation values are slightly higher (Figures 7.17 and 7.20). Clast fabric within trench 2 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.17), all three trenches of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.10), trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.28) and Sehonghong Site 1 (Figure 8.13) fall within the gelifluction envelope of Ballantyne (1981).

#### 9.4.5 Rock glaciers

Clasts within trenches 1 and 3 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.16) and in trench 1 of the Leqooa Valley western deposit (Figure 7.16) tend to be oriented downslope, which is similar to clast orientations within a rock glacier described by Harrison and Anderson (2001). The  $S_1$  values from within the rock glacier described by Harrison and Anderson (2001) range from 0.706 to 0.811, which is also similar to those obtained for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Leqooa Valley deposits (Figures 5.16, 7.16 and 7.19). In contrast, the clast orientations within trench 2 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.16), all trenches within the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.9), trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.27), trenches 2 and 3 of the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.16), and all trenches of the eastern deposit (Figure 7.19) concur with clast orientation within a rock glacier described by Vere and Matthews (1985) (Table 2.3).

The  $S_1$  values for a rock glacier described by Giardino and Vitek (1985) range from 0.625 to 0.961, which is similar to those obtained for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Figure 5.18), Sekhokong Site 1 (Figure 6.9) and Leqooa Valley deposits (Figure 7.16 and 7.19). More recent work on eigenvalues and fabric strength within rock glaciers measured  $S_1$  values ranging from 0.4117 to 0.6435 (Nicolas, 1994). These values are similar to those obtained for clasts within trench 2 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 1 (Figure 5.16 and 6.9) deposits and trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.27). Clast dips recorded for the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.16) do not concur with typical rock glacier clast dips (Table 2.3), however many clasts within the other linear deposits also have dip values  $>30^\circ$ . The sediment in all deposits, with the exception of trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit fall within the rock glacier internal fabric envelope based on work by Giardino and Vitek (1985) (Figures 5.18, 6.11, 6.30, 7.18 and 7.22).

#### 9.4.6 Pronival ramparts

The random clast orientations observed within the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.9), trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.27), trenches 2 and 3 of the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.16) and trench 2 of the eastern deposit (Figure 7.19) are similar to orientation characteristics for pronival ramparts (Table 2.3). In contrast, it has also been suggested that an oblique alignment of clasts may

occur in pronival ramparts with downslope dips (Harris, 1986; Shakesby *et al.*, 1999), which also occur in trench 2 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.16), trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1 and Site 2 deposits (Figures 6.9 and 6.27) and trench 1 of the Leqooa eastern deposit (Figure 7.19).

#### **9.4.7 Glacial moraine**

The weak orientations observed within the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.9), trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.27) and trenches 2 and 3 of the Leqooa eastern deposit (Figure 7.19) are similar to those of surface sediments in push moraines (Sharp, 1984). Had glaciers been present at the linear deposit sites, orientations parallel to glacier flow would concur with clasts within trenches 1 and 3 of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.16) and trenches 1 and 2 of the Leqooa western slope deposit (Figure 7.16).

Owen (1994) reports that supraglacial flow tills exhibit weak down-valley clast fabrics, which would conform to the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Figure 5.16), Sekhokong Site 2 (Figure 6.27), Leqooa Valley deposits (Figure 7.16 and 7.19) and Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2 deposits (Figure 8.12). Bennett *et al.* (1999) report that the average flow till isotropy value is 0.122 and average elongation value is 0.436 for clasts sampled in Svalbard, whereas Lawson (1979) reported an average isotropy value of 0.231 and elongation value of 0.455 in Alaska. However, such isotropy and elongation values do not concur with those for the deposits cited above (Table 2.3).

The linear and Sehonghong deposits display similar clast orientations to those described for supraglacial melt out till (Table 2.3 and 2.6). Isotropy for supraglacial melt-out till ranges from 0.037 (Lawson, 1979) to 0.209 (Bennett *et al.*, 1999), whilst elongation values range from 0.428 (Bennett *et al.*, 1999) to 0.82 (Lawson, 1979) (Table 2.3). Isotropy and elongation values for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2 fall within the range specified for supraglacial melt-out till (Figures 5.17, 6.10 and 8.13), as do clast dip values which are predominantly  $<40^\circ$  (Dowdeswell and Sharp, 1986) (Figure 5.16, 6.9 and 8.12).

Isotropy averages 0.114 whilst elongation averages 0.491 in lodgement tills (Bennett *et al.*, 1999) (Table 2.3). Although clasts within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Figure

5.17), Sekhokong Site 1 (Figure 6.10) and Sehonghong Sites 1 and 3 (Figure 8. 13) fall within the undeformed lodgement till envelope, clasts do not show strong preferred orientation in the direction of ice flow. Clast orientation within the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.16) is similar to orientations in Subglacial melt-out till and basal ice (Table 2.3 and 2.6). In addition, the sediment in all three trenches falls within the basal ice envelope (Figure 7.17). In contrast, clasts within the Leqooa eastern deposit in trenches 1 and 3 (Figure 7.20) also fall within the basal ice envelope; however only clasts in trench 1 display strong preferred orientation (Figure 7.19). Clasts at Sehonghong Site 3 also display strong orientations (Figure 8.12) and fall within the basal ice envelope (Figure 8.13). Steeply dipping clasts are common in basal ice deposits (Dowdeswell and Sharp, 1986); however clasts at the sites described above do not dip particularly steeply. Isotropy ranges from 0.038 (Ham and Mickelson, 1994) to 0.097 (Bennett *et al.*, 1999), whilst elongation values range from 0.597 (Bennett *et al.*, 1999) to 0.903 (Lawson, 1979) for basal ice, which is similar to values obtained for the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.17) and Sehonghong Site 3 (Figure 8.13).

#### **9.4.8 Fluvial deposits**

Clasts sampled from the south-facing deposits display random orientations which are not characteristics of fluvial deposits; however those sampled from the north-facing deposit are oriented parallel to the flow of the Sehonghong River (Figure 8.12). In contrast, clast imbrication at Sehonghong Site 3 is downstream, suggesting that fabric at this site is not characteristic of fluvial deposits.

#### **9.4.9 Summary**

The difficulty in using fabric orientation in the interpretation of a process origin, as described in section 2.2.2, is represented in this study. Clast orientations within all the Drakensberg deposits display characteristics from numerous processes and cannot be used alone to infer an origin.

### **9.5 PARTICLE SHAPE**

#### **9.5.1 Debris flows/avalanches**

A summary of particle shape for various deposits is presented in Table 2.4. The predominantly angular clasts sampled in the linear deposits and at Sehonghong Site 1

and 2 (Figures 5.22, 6.15, 6.33, 7.25, 7.29 and 8.18) are similar to the angular nature of clasts within debris flows described in section 2.1.2.2.1. The shape of debris flow clasts have been recorded as platy (Johnson and Rodine, 1984), whereas clast shape within all deposits is predominantly bladed (Tables 5.7, 6.4, 6.15, 7.7, 7.12 and 8.4). In contrast, although bladed shapes form the modal class in trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit, the Leqooa deposit and Sehonghong Site 3, there is a considerable proportion of platy clasts present at these sites. Clasts within all deposits with the exception of Sehonghong Site 3 are predominantly angular, which may also reflect debris avalanche processes.

### **9.5.2 Landslides and mudflows/mudslides**

The angular nature of clasts within landslides as described in section 2.1.2.2.3 is similar to clast roundness at all sites, however the proportion of clasts falling in the very angular and angular categories for landslides described by Hewitt (1999) is significantly higher than clasts falling within this category of angularity at all sites (Tables 5.9, 6.6, 6.17, 7.9, 7.14 and 8.6). Clast shape within mudflows described in section 2.1.2.2.4 is also angular, which is similar to clast shape within the linear slope deposits and Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2 (Figures 5.22, 6.15, 6.33, 7.25, 7.29 and 8.18).

### **9.5.3 Solifluction lobes**

Clasts within all linear deposits predominantly fall in the very angular to subangular classes of roundness (Tables 5.9, 6.6, 6.17, 7.9 and 7.14), which is similar to the angular nature of clasts within solifluction deposits. However, the predominant clast shape within all linear deposits is bladed (Tables 5.7, 6.4, 6.15, 7.7 and 7.12), which does not concur with the platy nature of clasts within solifluction deposits (Table 2.4). Clasts at Sites 1 and 2 of the Sehonghong deposit are also predominantly angular (Table 8.6), however clasts at Site 3 are only angular in the upper units in the coarse layer, whilst below this layer, clasts are more rounded, which does not concur with that of typical solifluction deposits. Bladed shapes form the modal class at all three sites (Table 8.4), which again does not conform to the platy nature of clasts within solifluction landforms.

#### 9.5.4 Rock glaciers

The predominantly platy nature of clasts within rock glaciers does not concur with the predominantly bladed clasts within the linear slope deposits (Tables 5.7, 6.4, 6.15, 7.7 and 7.12). The  $C_{40}$  ratio for the rock glacier in the Nantlle Valley, North Wales, is between 40 and 66 (Harrison and Anderson, 2001) (Table 2.4), which is similar to the  $C_{40}$  values for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.19), trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.12), the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.30), trench 2 of the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.22) and trench 1 of the Leqooa eastern deposit (Figure 7.26). However, the  $C_{40}$  ratio of as low as 20 has been recorded for a rock glacier in Norway (Vere and Matthews, 1985). Such a low value may however reflect subglacial processes, given that the rock glacier formed from a lateral moraine (Vere and Matthews, 1985). This lower  $C_{40}$  value is similar to that obtained within trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.30). The angular nature of clasts within rock glaciers (Table 2.4) fits the description of clasts located at all the linear deposit sites (Tables 5.9, 6.6, 6.17, 7.9 and 7.14).

#### 9.5.5 Pronival ramparts

Clast shape within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.22), trench 1 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.15), trench 1 of the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.25) and all trenches within the eastern deposit (Figure 7.29) have an angular modal class and small amount of subrounded clasts, which is similar to particle shape of pronival ramparts (Table 2.4). In contrast, clasts within trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1, Site 2 and Leqooa western deposit amount to 28%, 30% and 24% subrounded clasts respectively (Tables 6.6, 6.17 and 7.9), which is a significantly higher percentage than those found within pronival ramparts. Clast shape within pronival ramparts has been described as slabby, with a  $C_{40}$  index of ~38 to ~69 (Ballantyne and Kirkbride, 1986) (Table 2.4). The  $C_{40}$  values obtained for the clasts within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figure 5.19), trenches 1 and 2 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.12), the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit (Figure 6.30) and trench 1 of the Leqooa eastern deposit (Figure 7.26) also fall within the range suggested by Ballantyne and Kirkbride (1986).

### 9.5.6 Glacial moraines

The predominantly angular and bladed nature of the clasts sampled from the linear deposits (Figures 5.22, 6.15, 6.33, 7.25 and 7.29; Tables 5.7, 6.4, 6.15, 7.7 and 7.12) is similar to the nature of supraglacial debris (Table 2.4). This is also true of clasts sampled within the upper units of the Sehonghong south-facing and north-facing deposits (Figure 8.18 and Table 8.4). The  $C_{40}$  indices for supraglacial till (Benn and Ballantyne, 1993) are above 60, whilst samples collected for till from Slettmarkbreen in Norway have a  $C_{40}$  index below 16 (Benn and Ballantyne, 1993) (Table 2.4).  $C_{40}$  values obtained for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (between 46 and 54) (Figure 5.19) fall very close to values obtained for supraglacial till, whilst values for the remaining linear deposits fall between the supraglacial till and till values (Figures 6.12, 6.30, 7.22 and 7.26), possibly reflecting both active and passive processes. Clasts at Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2 also fall between values for supraglacial till and till, whilst clasts sampled at Site 3 fall within the range for till (Figure 8.15). All the linear deposits display a slight downslope tendency of increased clast roundness (Figures 5.22, 6.15, 6.33, 7.25 and 7.29).

### 9.5.7 Fluvial deposits

The percentage of spherical shapes found in fluvial deposits and described in section 2.1.6 are considerably higher than at all the Sehonghong sites (Table 8.4), where they make up between 0% and 4% of the total percentage of clasts. However, Figure 8.15 indicates that the majority of clasts fall within the compact categories of bladed, elongate and platy clasts and therefore indicate a certain degree of rounding. Prolate (rod-shaped/elongate) clasts are characteristic of river gravels (Howard, 1992), which is also indicated by the relatively high proportions of elongate clasts (32% and 36%) at Sites 1 and 3 respectively (Table 8.4). Subrounded clasts comprise 28% of the total sample at Site 3 (Table 8.6), which is also similar to fluvial deposits. In contrast, subrounded clasts make up between 0% and 8% of the total sample at Sites 1 and 2 (Table 8.4). Tributary sediments have been recorded as having RA indices (percentage of clasts in the very angular and angular categories) of 30% to 50% (McEwen and Matthews, 1998), which is similar to RA values at Sites 1 and 3 (46% and 18% respectively). Although clasts at Sites 1 and 3 display fairly rounded shapes, these may simply indicate greater amounts of weathering as discussed previously regarding the roundness of basalt clasts.

The maximum projection sphericity best reflects the hydraulic behaviour of particles and there is a close relationship between maximum projection sphericity and the velocity at which a particle of particular volume will settle in a fluid or roll along a bed (Gale and Hoare, 1991). Increase in sphericity of clasts in rivers occurs at a slow, constant rate (Bridge, 2003). Mean maximum projection sphericity at Sites 1 and 3 falls between 0.7 and 0.8, whilst mean maximum projection sphericity at Site 2 is 0.6 (Figure 8.17), indicating that clasts at Sites 1 and 3 are more spherical and would therefore preferentially roll along a bed.

#### **9.5.8 Summary**

As in the case of clast orientation, clast shape cannot be an indicator of process origin based on the wide range of processes which display similar clast shape characteristics to the Drakensberg deposits. Lithology does not appear to vary considerably at the sites; therefore the difference in clast shape between sites is believed to reflect different transport processes and will be discussed further in later sections.

### **9.6 MICROMORPHOLOGY**

#### **9.6.1 Debris flows, landslides and mudslides**

Trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.18) and trench 2 of the Leqooa western deposit (Figure 7.31) contain rotational features, which also occur within debris flow deposits as described in section 2.1.2.2.1. There is also evidence for preferential orientation of clasts along a shear within trench 3 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit (Figure 6.18), which again may occur within debris flow deposits. The Sekhokong Site 2, Leqooa eastern and Sehonghong Site 1 deposits display a very coarse-grained structure (Figure 6.34), which may be due to the movement of fluid, which has the ability to wash away fines, leaving zones of sand-sized or larger particles (Van der Meer, 1993). In contrast, the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Leqooa eastern and Sehonghong Site 2 deposits do not show any micromorphological features associated with debris flows (Tables 5.11, 6.20, 7.18 and 8.9), and the silt coatings which do occur within the deposits are not disturbed and scattered within the matrix, as can occur within debris flows (Van Vliet-Lanoë, 1985a) (Figures 5.28 and 8.19). However, it must be taken into account that most work has been undertaken on fine-grained debris flows, whilst the deposits sampled in this research are coarse-grained. It remains difficult to sample coarse-grained deposits without destroying the

microstructure, and in such cases macroscopic microstructures are the only ones which can be used to assess the origin of the deposits (Bertran, Pers Comm., 2006). Although recent work on the micromorphology of coarse-grained debris flows has been undertaken, such information remains unpublished (Menzies, Pers Comm., 2006). The deposits do not contain slip planes or other microfeatures associated with slides (Tables 5.11, 6.9, 6.20, 7.17, 7.18 and 8.9).

#### **9.6.2 Solifluction lobes**

Platy structures are observed within all micromorphological sections collected within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Table 5.11) and Sekhokong Site 1 (Table 6.9) deposits and are typical of solifluction deposits as described in section 2.2.1.6. Further features typical of solifluction occur at Sehonghong Site 2 in the form of clay coatings (Figure 8.20 and 8.21). However these clay coatings are only at 100 cm depth and therefore probably represent postdepositional illuviation of clay. Silt cappings on the surface of clasts occur within all deposits to a certain extent (Tables 5.11, 6.9, 6.20, 7.17, 7.18 and 8.9). In addition, cappings become more frequent downslope within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit, which is once again indicative of solifluction deposits. Encircling silt cappings surround the more rounded particles at Sehonghong Site 1 (Figure 8.19), which indicates that gelifluction processes may have occurred at this site (Van Vliet-Lanoë, 1985b, 1987).

#### **9.6.3 Glacial moraines**

Discrete shears, rotation structures and pressure shadows are present in samples collected from the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit and the Leqooa western deposit (Figures 6.18 and 7.31), which are also found within glacial deposits (section 2.1.5). The thin sections obtained from within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 2 and Leqooa eastern deposit indicate that the sediment is not overconsolidated, which may reflect supraglacial properties.

#### **9.6.4 Fluvial deposits**

Although clay coatings lining voids at Sehonghong Site 2 at 100 cm depth are present (Table 8.9, Figures 8.20 and 8.21), these are believed to be a function of present-day pedogenic processes. Unfortunately, fluvial micromorphological research appears to

be restricted to palaeosols within floodplains, and thus no comparisons can be made between samples collected in this research with those from fluvial environments.

#### **9.6.5 Summary**

The majority of the thin sections collected from the deposits display silt cappings, which is typical of solifluction processes. The Sekhokong Site 2, Leqooa eastern and Sehonghong Site 2 deposits display a coarse-grained structure which could be associated with debris flow processes. In contrast, the Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa western deposits contain several rotational structures which may be associated with debris flow processes or glacial processes. A major problem in ascribing a process origin based on micromorphological analysis arises from the apparent similarities between sediment flow deposits, solifluction deposits and subglacially deformed deposits, such as for example in the presence of discrete shears, rotation structures and cappings. It is therefore important that microstructural analyses be undertaken in conjunction with other sedimentological analyses (Van der Meer, 1993; Lachniet *et al.*, 2001).

#### **9.7 EROSION REMNANT**

A final process origin which has not previously been considered is that the linear deposits may be debris mantles which have been fluvially incised to produce the ridge morphologies. This process origin can be discarded based on a comparison between the particle size characteristics of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit and the pits sampled on the adjacent slope (Figures 5.12 to 5.14 and 5.15). There is a clear difference in texture between the pits and the deposit, with the pits containing a much greater amount of sand and silt than the material within the deposit. Pits 1 and 5 are described as containing more organic matter than the other pits (Figures 5.7 and 5.11). This corresponds with the statement by Schmitz and Rooyani (1987) that organic soils have been identified at elevations above 3000 m a.s.l., as pits 1 and 5 occur between 3090 m a.s.l. and 3100 m a.s.l. (Figure 5.2). These organic soils form under a dense vegetation cover where temperatures are below 8°C and where drainage is impeded (Schmitz and Rooyani, 1987). Pits 3 and 4 are typical of the shallow soils found on the mountain slopes of Lesotho as a result of erosion and low temperatures (Schmitz and Rooyani, 1987), whereas pit 2 strongly resembles the sediment found within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit (Figures 5.4 to 5.6 and 5.8). This may be explained by

the presence of a small cirque glacier covering the area where pit 2 is situated. This cirque glacier would have been moving over this area in order to supply material to the deposit and some may have been deposited on retreat of the glacier.

It has been suggested by Sumner (2004c), that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit is a relict openwork block accumulation and that deposits ascribed to glacial processes by Grab (1996a) appear to be incised colluvial mantles. The fluvially incised debris mantle is discarded as a possible process origin on the basis that it would be expected that the material within the deposit would be similar to that on adjacent slopes if it had simply been fluvially incised *in situ*. In addition, the colluvial material observed at Sehonghong is significantly different to the sediment within the linear slope deposits. Although the deposits contain a significant amount of blocks within them, these are not regarded as openwork deposits, given that the blocks are matrix supported.

## **9.8 POSSIBLE PROCESS ORIGIN FOR THE TSATSA-LA-MANGAUNG DEPOSIT**

It is evident from the discussion in section 2.2, that there can be great difficulty in identifying and distinguishing between various process mechanisms that occur within the periglacial and glacial zone. Great care must therefore be exercised in identifying a possible process origin for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit, and all possible hypotheses should be explored.

In order to help identify a possible process origin for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit, all morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological characteristics have been summarised to determine whether they are typical attributes of the possible process mechanisms suggested for the formation of the deposit (Table 9.1). Although lithology influences the various sedimentary characteristics investigated in this research, morphological and micromorphological characteristics are also taken into account when determining a process origin. The suggestion that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit may be a debris flow or debris avalanche can be rejected on the basis that it does not display the necessary attributes in terms of morphology, fabric, eigenvalue, particle shape or micromorphology. Similarly, a mudflow/mudslide and landslide origin can be rejected as the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit does not host the attributes regarded as characteristic of these features. The deposit hosts only the

**Table 9.1** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the various Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness | Micro-<br>morphology |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                |                      | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow               | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ×                    | Debris deposit             |
| Mass movement             | ✓               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | ×                    | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | ×                    | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ×               | ×                | ×       | ✓      | ✓               | ×              | ✓              | ✓                    | Solifluction lobe          |
| Periglacial/permafrost    | ×               | ×                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ×              | ✓              | ?                    | Rock Glacier               |
| Nival                     | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ×      | ?               | ✓              | ✓              | ?                    | Pronival rampart           |
| Glacial                   | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✓              | ✓              | ?                    | Moraine                    |

sorting, fabric and eigenvalue attributes of a rock glacier and the fabric, eigenvalue and roundness characteristics of a solifluction landform, and is therefore not considered to be either of these features. However, the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit hosts most of the morphological and sedimentological characteristics typical to pronival ramparts, with the exception of the fabric results.

The fabric patterns are dismissed in this case, based on the discussion in section 2.2.2, where it is suggested that fabric may not be truly representative of a facies under investigation (Benn and Ringrose, 2001), as it can be affected by clast properties (Glenn *et al.*, 1957; Boulton, 1970; Drake, 1974; Kjær and Krüger, 1998; Carr and Rose, 2003; Millar, 2005). Although the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit shows several characteristics typical to pronival ramparts, such ramparts usually form parallel to the backwall and at the foot of talus slopes overlooking rockwalls (Lewis, 1966; Linder and Marks, 1984). This is not true for many end and lateral moraines (Ballantyne and Kirkbride, 1986), neither is it true for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit. It is thus suggested that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit is unlikely to be a fossil pronival rampart.

It would appear that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit hosts all the morphological and sedimentological characteristics typical to glacial moraines. Although the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit does not possess the micromorphological attributes of glacial deposits, there is no documented literature on the micromorphological characteristics of supraglacial deposits, and thus no comparison can be made in this regard. The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit displays the micromorphological attributes and fabric and roundness characteristics of a solifluction lobe; however it does not demonstrate any other morphological or sedimentological features typical to solifluction lobes. It is suggested that post depositional changes may include the translocation of clay and silt and this process is usually visible as a coating (Van der Meer, 1987). It is thus proposed that post-depositional solifluction processes have taken place within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit, as is reflected by the typical solifluction fabrics and micromorphology.

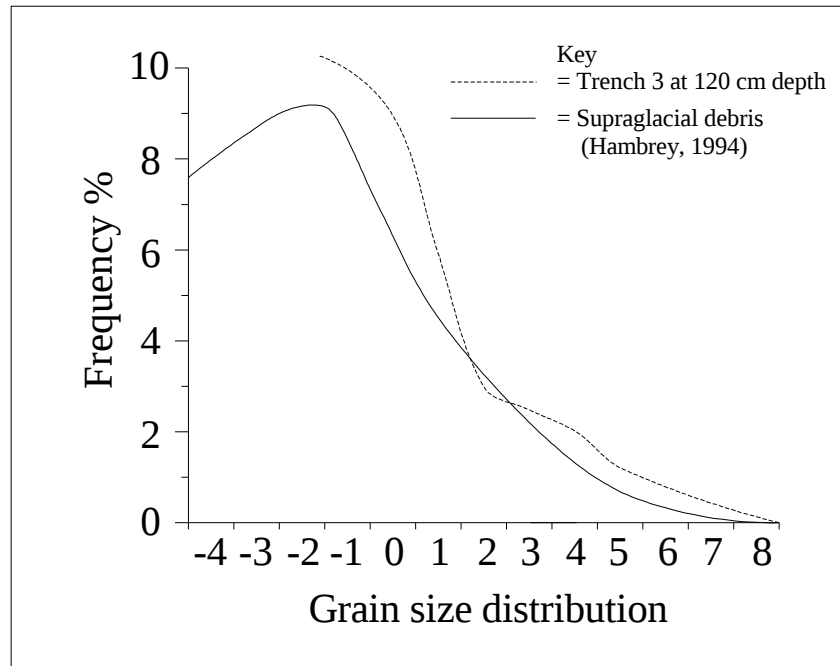
The sedimentary characteristics of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit resemble those of supraglacial melt-out till and flow till. The clasts within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung

deposit are predominantly angular (Figure 5.22 and Table 5.9) and not striated or faceted. The grain-size distribution is coarse and unimodal (Figures 5.12 to 5.14, 9.5 and Table 5.1), clast fabric is variable (Figure 5.17), and particles are poorly consolidated and the structure is massive (Figures 5.4 to 5.6). These sedimentary results imply that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit is a moraine, which can be further quantified by comparing  $C_{40}$  index and roundness characteristics of the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit to envelopes produced by Benn and Ballantyne (1994) on a covariance plot (Figure 9.6). The clasts sampled in trenches 1 and 3 fall within the moraine envelope, whilst the clasts sampled in trench 2 fall just outside this envelope. The moraine envelope represents clasts sampled from lateral and end moraines in Jotunheimen, Norway (Benn and Ballantyne, 1994). Results from the lateral moraines are similar to those for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit. High  $C_{40}$  values (around 44) and high RA values (percentage of clast falling within the very angular and angular categories) (between 44 and 62) are typical for lateral moraines, whilst the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit has  $C_{40}$  values ranging between 46 and 54 (Figure 5.19) and RA values between 58 and 62 (Figure 5.22 and Table 5.9). These values are significantly higher than those recorded by Benn and Ballantyne (1994) for the end moraines, which may be as a result of clast modification during transport, or a progressive increase in the proportion of actively transported clasts towards the glacier snout producing lower  $C_{40}$  and RA values (Benn and Ballantyne, 1994).

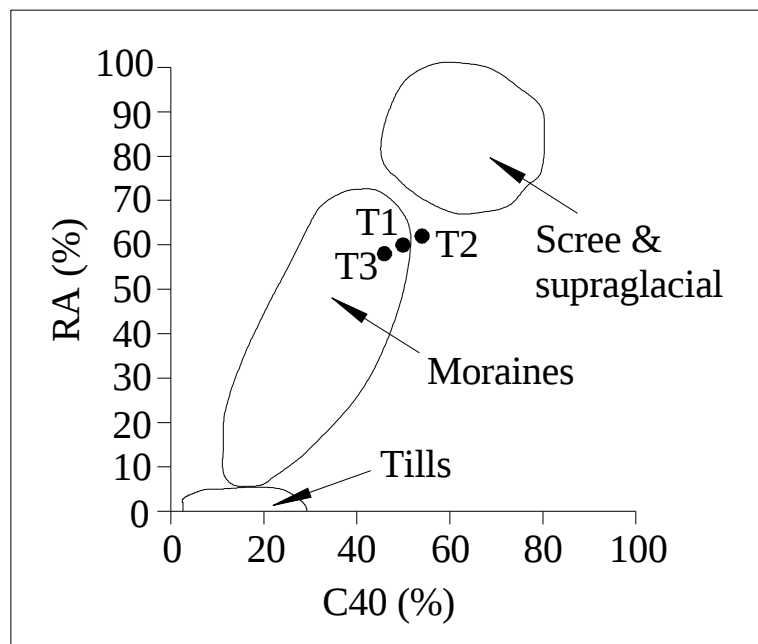
The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit displays similar morphological and sedimentological characteristics to lateral moraines. It displays evidence of passive transport in terms of its particle size analysis, which is predominantly coarse-grained; however there is also evidence of active transport through the presence of subangular clasts. It is therefore suggested, based on the morphological and sedimentological characteristics, that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit is a moraine.

## **9.9 POSSIBLE PROCESS ORIGIN FOR THE SEKHOKONG SITE 1 DEPOSIT**

In order to help identify a possible process origin for the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit, all morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological characteristics have been summarised, in terms of whether they are typical attributes of the possible process



**Figure 9.5** Typical grain size distributions for supraglacial debris compared to an example at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (after Hambrey, 1994).



**Figure 9.6** Plotting the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung sediments against the co-variance plot of  $C_{40}$  and RA indexes and sediment envelopes (after Benn and Ballantyne, 1994) (T1 = trench 1, T2 = trench 2, T3 = trench 3).

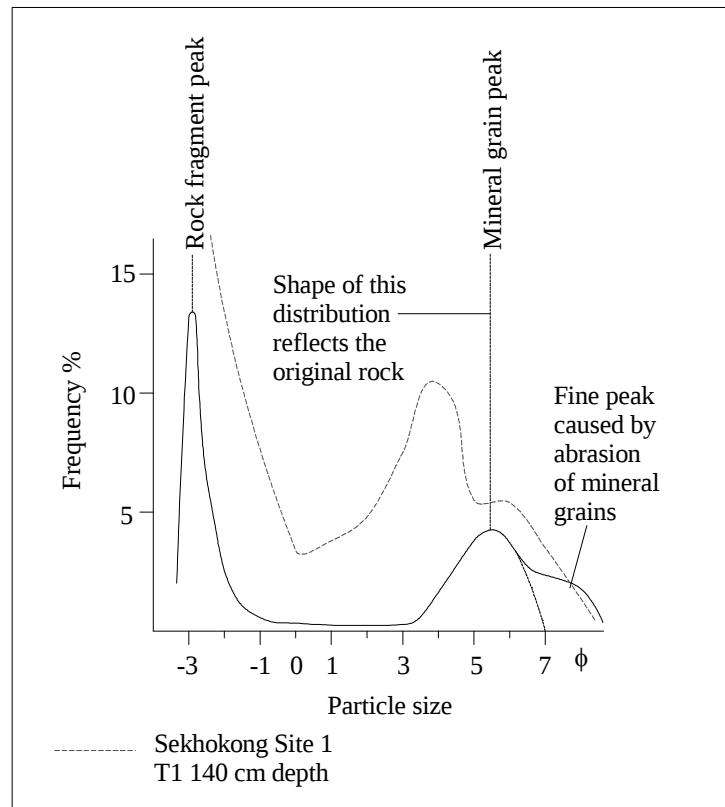
mechanisms suggested for the formation of the deposit (Table 9.2). The theory that the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit may be a debris flow or avalanche can be rejected on the basis that it does not possess the necessary attributes in terms of morphology, eigenvalue or particle shape. Similarly, a mudflow/mudslide and landslide origin can be rejected as the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit displays only the fabric and roundness characteristics of a mudflow or mudslide and only the fabric characteristics of a landslide. The deposit possesses only the sorting, eigenvalue and roundness attributes of a rock glacier and the eigenvalues and clast shape of a solifluction lobe, and is therefore unlikely to represent any such fossil feature.

It would appear that the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit hosts all the morphological and sedimentological characteristics typical to a moraine. The Sekhokong Site 1 deposit also hosts all the morphological and sedimentological characteristics typical to a pronival rampart, with the exception of the roundness results. Although the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit shows several characteristics typical to pronival ramparts, the roundness characteristics of the deposit suggest some form of active transport. Although subnival transport in the form of debris flow sediment emerging from the snow bed is accepted to account for the presence of subangular clasts on pronival ramparts (Shakesby *et al.*, 1995), the clasts within the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit are more rounded than that for typical pronival ramparts. Furthermore, pronival ramparts usually form parallel to the backwall and at the foot of talus slopes overlooking rockwalls (Lewis, 1966; Linder and Marks, 1984), whilst the Sekhokong site 1 deposit is positioned downslope. It is thus proposed that the deposit is more likely to represent a glacial moraine than a fossil pronival rampart.

The various transport paths through a glacier have been described in section 2.1.5.2. Based on the sedimentary characteristics of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit, it is suggested that both active and passive transport processes have taken place in the formation of the moraine. This deposit contains more fines than the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit despite their similar lithology. The sediment is bimodal and clasts are more rounded. The bimodal particle size characteristics of trenches 1 and 2 are typical of subglacially transported sediment. This is evident in Figure 9.7, which indicates the grain-size distribution of subglacially transported debris compared to an example in trench 1 of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit. Both grain-size distributions

**Table 9.2** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the various Sekhokong Site 1 deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness | Micro-<br>morphology |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                |                      | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow               | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ✓                    | Debris deposit             |
| Mass movement             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ×                    | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | ×                    | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ✓               | ✓              | ×              | ✓                    | Solifluction lobe          |
| Periglacial/permafrost    | ×               | ×                | ✓       | ×      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ?                    | Rock Glacier               |
| Nival                     | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ?                    | Pronival rampart           |
| Glacial                   | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✓              | ✓              | ✓                    | Moraine                    |



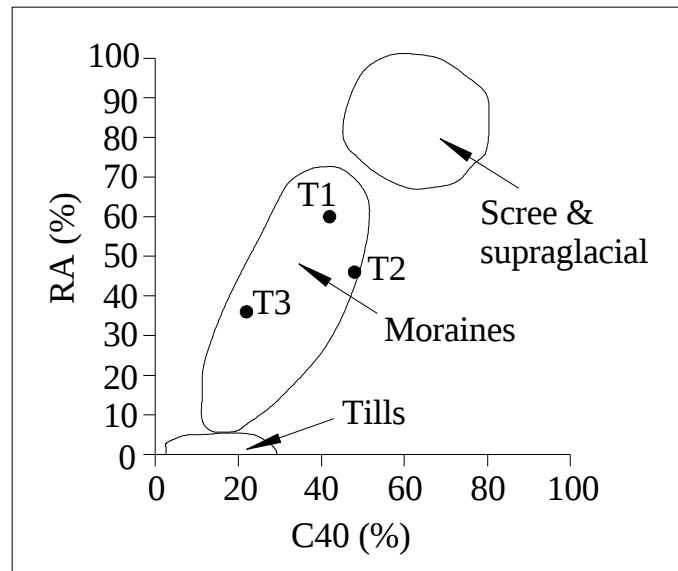
**Figure 9.7** The grain-size distribution of subglacially transported debris, composed of three distinct populations: (1) lithic or rock fragments, (2) mineral grains produced by crushing of the rock fragments, (3) fines produced by the abrasion of individual mineral grains (after Bennett and Glasser, 1996), compared to an example at Sekhokong Site 1.

have a primary peak of coarse material and a second mineral grain peak. It is therefore suggested that the sediment at this site underwent a greater amount of active transport than the sediment at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit. In terms of assigning a type of till to the sediment, the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit contains attributes characteristic of subglacial melt-out till and supraglacial melt-out till (Table 2.6).

The sediment in trench 1 contains angular clasts (Figure 6.15 and Table 6.6) typical of supraglacial melt-out till, however particle size distribution is bimodal (Figure 6.6 and Table 6.1), which is characteristic of subglacial melt-out till. Particle fabric is poorly developed (Figure 6.9) as in the case of supraglacial melt-out till, however the sediment is well packed (Figure 6.3), which is typical of subglacial melt-out till. The sediment is massive (Figure 6.3), which is characteristic of both types of till. In contrast, clasts in trench 2 are more rounded (Figure 6.15 and Table 6.6), which is

characteristic of subglacial melt-out till, however the particle distribution is unimodal (Figure 6.7 and Table 6.1), which is typical of supraglacial melt-out till. The sediment in trench 3 contains all the attributes of subglacial melt-out till, and where clasts are more rounded (Figure 6.15 and Table 6.6), the particle distribution is bimodal (Figure 6.8 and Table 6.1), with the exception of the sample collected at 80 cm depth in trench 3, fabric is oriented transverse to the deposit (Figure 6.9) and the sediment is well packed and massive (Figure 6.5).

The sedimentary results indicate that the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit is likely to be a moraine composed of material which has undergone active and passive transport, which includes lateral moraines. This can be further quantified by comparing  $C_{40}$  index and roundness characteristics of the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit to envelopes produced by Benn and Ballantyne (1994) on a covariance plot (Figure 9.8). The clasts sampled in the three trenches fall within the moraine envelope from lateral and end moraines in Jotunheimen, Norway (Benn and Ballantyne, 1994). Results from the lateral moraines are similar to those for the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit, which has  $C_{40}$  values ranging between 22 and 48 (Figure 6.12) and RA values between 36 and 60 (Figure 6.15 and Table 6.6).



**Figure 9.8** Co-variance plot of  $C_{40}$  and RA indexes and sediment envelopes (after Benn and Ballantyne, 1994) in comparison to sediment from the three trenches at the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit.

Lateral moraine debris may be predominantly passively transported rockfall material which suffers little modification, retaining its primary parent material characteristics which tend to be coarse, angular clasts with little matrix, however actively transported debris may also take place and result in matrix-rich debris in some dump moraines (Small, 1983; Benn and Evans, 1998; Huddart, 2004). The Sekhokong Site 1 deposit displays similar morphological and sedimentological characteristics to lateral moraines. It displays evidence of passive transport in terms of its particle size distribution, which is predominantly coarse-grained in trench 2, however there is also evidence of active transport through the presence finer material in trenches 1 and 3 and the presence of subangular clasts. It is therefore suggested, based on the morphological and sedimentological characteristics, that the Sekhokong Site 1 deposit is a moraine.

#### **9.10 POSSIBLE PROCESS ORIGIN FOR THE SEKHOKONG SITE 2 DEPOSIT**

The morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological characteristics of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit have been summarised in terms of whether they are typical attributes of the possible process mechanisms suggested for the formation of the deposit (Table 9.3). The suggestion that the deposit may be a mudslide can be rejected given inappropriate morphological and particle size characteristics. The deposit contains none of the typical characteristics associated with landslides. Similarly, a pronival origin may be rejected due to the lack of morphological and clast roundness characteristics. The Sekhokong Site 2 deposit has no morphological, particle size, fabric or eigenvalue characteristics of a rock glacier and only has the eigenvalue characteristics of a solifluction lobe. Similarly, the deposit displays no sorting or eigenvalue characteristics typical of a moraine. Although it contains similar morphological properties, the topographic setting of the area is not conducive to the formation of a moraine, given that the position of the deposit is central to its surrounding topography. Had a glacier occupied this area it is unlikely that it would have produced a moraine in such a central location. In contrast, the deposit displays most of the attributes of a debris flow, which suggests that the process origin of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is most likely associated with those producing debris flows.

**Table 9.3** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the various Sekhokong Site 2 deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness | Micro-<br>morphology |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                |                      | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow               | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✗              | ✓              | ✓                    | Debris deposit             |
| Mass movement             | ✗               | ✗                | ?       | ✗      | ?               | ?              | ✗              | ✗                    | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ✗               | ✗                | ✓       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | ✗                    | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ✗               | ✗                | ?       | ✗      | ✓               | ✗              | ✗              | ✓                    | Solifluction lobe          |
| Periglacial/permafrost    | ✗               | ✗                | ✓       | ✗      | ✗               | ✓              | ✓              | ?                    | Rock Glacier               |
| Nival                     | ✗               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ?               | ✓              | ✗              | ?                    | Pronival rampart           |
| Glacial                   | ✓               | ✓                | ✗       | ✓      | ✗               | ✓              | ✓              | ✗                    | Moraine                    |

The theory of a debris flow forming the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is somewhat problematic in terms of the lack of available material for mobilization discussed in section 9.2.1, and the discrepancy in terms of typical clast shape within debris flows. In order to account for sufficient material to form the debris flow, it is suggested that a small glacier occupied the area directly above the deposit, which also explains the unconventional particle shape within the debris flow, which is typical to that of a glacial moraine. Sediment may accumulate in the glacier foreland, which is then subjected to ice pushing and compression by an advancing or re-advancing glacier to create push moraines (Benn and Evans, 1998; Van der Wateren, 2002). These are small moraine ridges, usually less than 10 m in height, produced by minor glacial advances (Benn and Evans, 1998). Material is bulldozed to form a ridge by sweeping up the supraglacial debris which has been dumped from the ice margin, or deformation of proglacial sediment (Bennett and Glasser, 1996).

As discussed previously, the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit displays the particle size and clast shape characteristics typical of both active and passive glacial transport, therefore it is suggested that sediment accumulated at the lower margin of the glacier, either as a push moraine, or simply an accumulation of material resulting from glacier advances during the winter months, which was later released on deglaciation, creating a debris flow. It is suggested that the debris flow was initiated as a result of melt-water, which would indicate that the sediment within the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit may reflect typical attributes of flow till. If water released during ice-melt is not easily displaced, then glacial sediment may become liquefied and flow (Whiteman, 2002). The ratio of sediment stress to shear stress determines whether or not flow occurs. The stress imposed on the debris is increased by the thickening of the debris pile, either by addition of further melt-out at the base, or by the superimposition of debris flows from higher up the slope (Whiteman, 2002). Glacier ice typically steepens towards its margins, which provides locations for a wide variety of mass movement processes to occur, however flow is generally the dominant process as a result of excessive quantities of water (Whiteman, 2002).

Based on the morphological and sedimentological analysis of the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit, and the sedimentological characteristics of both debris flows and glacial till, it is suggested that a small glacier occupied the area directly above the deposit,

pushing and depositing material in its foreland and initiating a debris flow and subsequent deposition on deglaciation.

### **9.11 POSSIBLE PROCESS ORIGIN FOR THE LEQOOA VALLEY DEPOSITS**

All morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological characteristics have been summarised for the Leqooa Valley deposits, in terms of whether they are typical attributes of the possible process mechanisms suggested for the formation of the deposit (Tables 9.4 and 9.5). The western slope deposit does not possess the necessary morphology, eigenvalue or clast shape characteristics of a debris flow or debris avalanche, and is therefore not considered to have originated from such processes. Similarly, a mudflow/mudslide and landslide origin can be rejected as the western slope deposit displays none of the characteristics of a mudflow or mudslide, and only the morphology and fabric characteristics of a landslide. Although the western slope deposit possesses the morphology, particle size and sorting of a pronival rampart and the sorting, fabric, eigenvalue and roundness attributes of a rock glacier, none of the other attributes typical to these features are recorded. In addition, the western slope deposit does not display the morphology, eigenvalue and shape characteristics of solifluction lobes.

The eastern slope deposit possesses the particle size distribution, sorting, fabric and clast roundness characteristics typical of debris flows, however only the fabric and roundness characteristics typical of mudflows and mudslides, and none of the necessary characteristics of landslides. In addition, the eastern slope deposit does not possess the necessary particle size, or clast shape characteristics of a pronival rampart, nor the morphology, particle size or clast shape of a rock glacier. Similarly, a solifluction origin for the eastern slope deposit may be rejected as it does not possess the morphology, eigenvalue and clast shape characteristics typical of these features.

It would appear that the Leqooa Valley deposits host all the morphological and sedimentological characteristics typical to a moraine. Although the eastern deposit does not possess the micromorphological characteristics of glacial processes, these cannot be ruled out as only two thin sections were collected in the deposit and these may not be representative of the deposit as a whole. It is suggested that both active

**Table 9.4** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the various Leqooa western deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness | Micro-<br>morphology |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                |                      | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow               | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ✓                    | Debris deposit             |
| Mass movement             | ✓               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ×                    | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ×                    | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ×               | ×                | ✓       | ✓      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ✓                    | Solifluction lobe          |
| Periglacial/permafrost    | ×               | ×                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ×              | ✓              | ?                    | Rock Glacier               |
| Nival                     | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ×      | ?               | ×              | ×              | ?                    | Pronival rampart           |
| Glacial                   | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✓              | ✓              | ✓                    | Moraine                    |

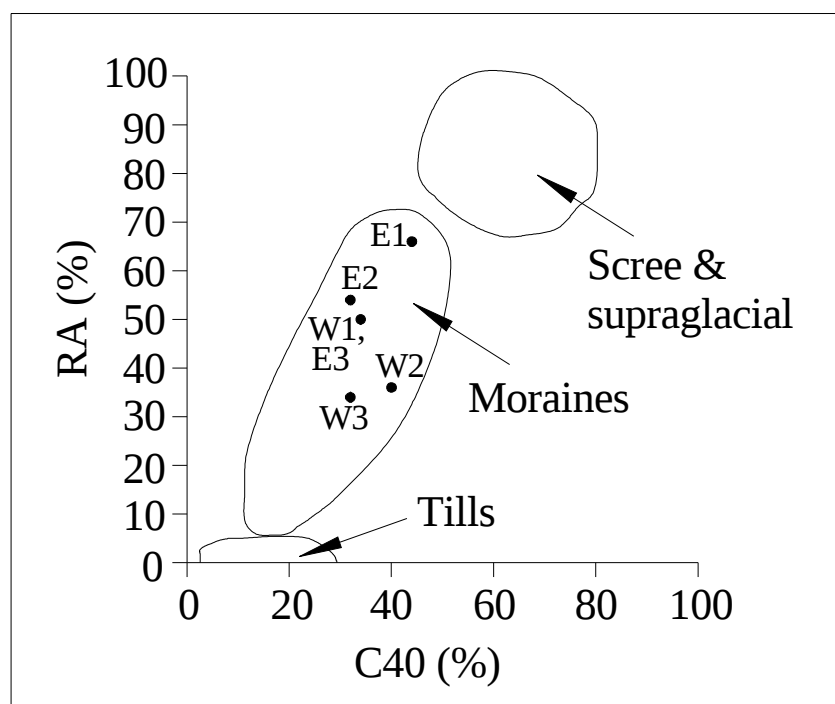
**Table 9.5** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the various Leqooa eastern deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness | Micro-<br>morphology |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                |                      | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow               | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ×                    | Debris deposit             |
| Mass movement             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ×                    | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | ×                    | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ×      | ×               | ×              | ✓              | ✓                    | Solifluction lobe          |
| Periglacial/permafrost    | ×               | ×                | ✓       | ×      | ✓               | ×              | ✓              | ?                    | Rock Glacier               |
| Nival                     | ✓               | ×                | ✓       | ✓      | ?               | ×              | ✓              | ?                    | Pronival rampart           |
| Glacial                   | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✓              | ✓              | ×                    | Moraine                    |

and passive transport processes have taken place in the formation of these moraines, given the substantial quantity of fines, several bimodal distributions and the presence of subangular clasts. As discussed previously, bimodal particle size characteristics and fine material is typical of subglacially transported sediment, however the angular clasts reflect supraglacial transport. In addition, clasts in all trenches (with the exception of trench 3 for the eastern slope deposit) fall within the basal ice fabric envelope (Figures 7.17 and 7.20), once again suggesting active transport processes.

The western slope deposit displays attributes similar to lodgement till, subglacial melt out till and supraglacial melt out till (Table 2.6). It possesses several bimodal distributions in the three trenches (Table 7.1), the strong clast fabric in the direction of ice flow (Figure 7.16), similar isotropy and elongation (Figure 7.17) and well consolidated attributes (Figures 7.4 to 7.6) associated with lodgement till and subglacial melt out till. In contrast, this deposit also contains some unimodal distributions (Table 7.1) and a relatively high proportion of angular clasts (Figure 7.25 and Table 7.9), associated with supraglacial melt out till. Conversely, the eastern slope deposit contains fewer bimodal distributions than the western slope deposit (Table 7.4), and possesses a less significant proportion of fines (Figures 7.13 to 7.15 and Table 7.4). The random fabric characteristics in trenches 2 and 3 (Figure 7.19), together with predominantly angular clast shapes (Figure 7.29 and Table 7.14) are all typical of supraglacial melt out till.

These sedimentary results indicate that the Leqooa Valley deposits are moraines, which consist of both supraglacially and subglacially transported material in the case of the western slope deposit, whilst the eastern slope deposit is primarily composed of supraglacially transported material. This can be further quantified by comparing  $C_{40}$  index and roundness characteristics of the Leqooa Valley deposits to envelopes produced by Benn and Ballantyne (1994) on a covariance plot (Figure 9.9). The clasts sampled in the three trenches for both deposits fall within the moraine envelope. Results from the lateral moraines are similar to those for the Leqooa Valley deposits. The western slope deposit has  $C_{40}$  values ranging between 32 and 40 (Figure 7.22) and RA values between 34 and 50 (Figure 7.25 and Table 7.9), whilst the eastern slope deposit has  $C_{40}$  values ranging between 32 and 47 (Figure 7.26) and RA values



**Figure 9.9** Co-variance plot of  $C_{40}$  and RA indexes and sediment envelopes (after Benn and Ballantyne, 1994) in comparison to the three trenches at the Leqooa Valley deposits (W1, W2, W3 = trenches 1, 2 and 3 for the western deposit, E1, E2 and E3 = trenches 1, 2 and 3 for the eastern deposit).

between 50 and 66 (Figure 7.29 and Table 7.14), both of which are similar to values described by Benn and Ballantyne (1994).

As stated previously, lateral moraine debris may be predominantly passively transported rockfall material which undergoes little modification, retaining its primary parent material characteristics which tend to be coarse, angular clasts with little matrix; however actively transported debris may also take place and result in matrix-rich debris in some dump moraines (Small, 1983; Benn and Evans, 1998; Huddart, 2004). The Leqooa Valley deposits display similar morphological and sedimentological characteristics to lateral moraines. The deposits provide evidence of passive transport in terms of particle size distribution, which is predominantly coarse-grained in the eastern deposit; however there is also evidence of active transport through the presence of finer material and subangular clasts in the western deposit. It is therefore suggested, based on the morphological and sedimentological characteristics that the deposits are lateral moraines.

## **9.12 POSSIBLE PROCESS ORIGIN FOR THE SEHONGHONG DEPOSITS**

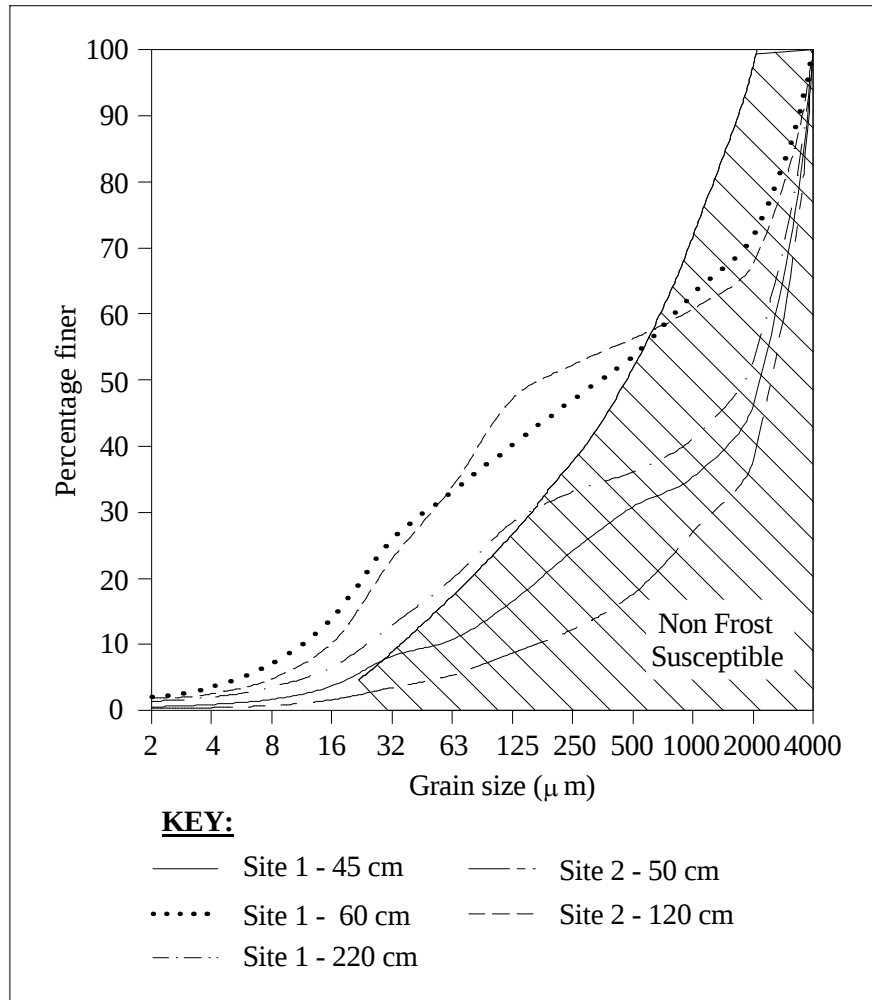
### **9.12.1 Deposits on the south-facing slope**

A Summary of all morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological characteristics for the deposits located on the south-facing slopes of the Sehonghong River compared to various process mechanisms are presented in Table 9.6. The proposal that these deposits may be of mudflow or landslide origin may be dismissed on the basis that these deposits only contain the fabric characteristics of a mudflow, and none of the attributes of a landslide. There are several uncertainties regarding a fluvial origin for these deposits, given that clast shape and roundness is similar to that of fluvial deposits in the lower unit, yet not in the upper unit. However, there is a clear absence of stratification and preferred clast orientation in the lower unit deposits, therefore these are not considered to be of fluvial origin. The deposits possess all but the morphology and clast shape of debris flows, all but the clast shape of solifluction deposits and all but the morphology and micromorphology of glacial deposits. There is uncertainty regarding the micromorphological characteristics of the south-facing deposits with regards to debris flow processes, given that Site 1 possesses certain characteristics, whilst Site 2 does not. Although the morphology of these deposits does not concur with the typical morphologies of the associated process origins, these may still have contributed to the deposition of the Sehonghong deposits, without forming the distinct associated landforms. Clast shape may also be attributed to lithology, and cannot alone reject such origins. Although these deposits possess all the sedimentary characteristics of tills, these are highly variable deposits (Summerfield, 1991) and the lack of glacial landforms indicates that glacial processes did not operate at this site during the LGM. It is therefore suggested that the deposits occurring on the south-facing slopes of the Sehonghong River have been formed by both solifluction and debris flow processes.

As stated in Chapter 2, mass wasting occurs in the periglacial environment due to repeated freezing and thawing (Ballantyne and Harris, 1994). Frost susceptibility of sediment depends strongly on the amount of fines present (Konrad, 1999), with silts being most susceptible to the formation of segregated ice, as both suction potential and permeability are moderately high (Summerfield, 1991). The Sehonghong sediments are compared to a frost susceptibility diagram (Figure 9.10), which indicates that Site 1 at 45 cm depth and Site 2 at 50 cm depth host non frost

**Table 9.6** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the various Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2 south-facing deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness | Micro-<br>morphology |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                |                      | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow/avalanche     | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ×              | ✓              | ?                    | Debris deposit             |
| Landslide                 | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ×                    | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ×              | ×                    | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ×              | ✓              | ✓                    | Solifluction/head deposit  |
| Glacial                   | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✓              | ✓              | ×                    | Till                       |
| Fluvial                   | ✓               | ×                | ×       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ?              | ?                    | Fluvial terrace            |



**Figure 9.10** Grain-size curves for Sekhokong Site 1 and 2 compared to Beskow's (1935) frost susceptibility criteria (from Ballantyne and Harris, 1994).

susceptible sediments, whilst the finer material sampled at Site 1 at 60 cm and 220 cm depth and Site 2 at 120 cm depth are more frost susceptible, which suggests that these sediments would have been predisposed to the formation of segregated ice. This is further reinforced by the presence of silt cappings at these depths (Table 8.9), which suggests frost creep (Van Vliet-Lanoë, 1985b).

Ground temperatures were monitored at 3220 m a.s.l. in the Sehonghong area by Sumner (2003) and a potential freezing front at a maximum of 16 cm depth has been suggested. Diurnal freezing and thawing is only active in the upper 10 cm and most active in the first 5 cm, which indicates that the potential for sorted patterned ground is restricted to surficial sediments (Sumner, 2003). This corresponds to the typical size

of sorted stripes and circles found at these altitudes (Grab, 1996b). A 1°C drop in temperature corresponds to an increase in maximum freezing depth of approximately 45 cm, therefore in order for freezing to penetrate to a depth of 1 m, a temperature depression of at least 2.5° C would be required (Sumner, 2003). Given a 6°C decrease in temperature during the LGM, frost penetration could have exceeded 2 m, although permafrost is unlikely, due to the relatively high mean annual air temperatures (Boelhouwers, 1991; Sumner, 2003). In contrast, 50 cm frost depths were measured for a sorted circle and a stone-banked lobe near Mafadi (approximately 3400 m a.s.l.) in the central Drakensberg (Grab, 2004). The frost penetration rates were considerably slower for the sorted circle than for the stone-banked lobe, which has been attributed to the variable nature of solar radiation with regards to aspect, given that the sorted circle is on a north-facing slope, whilst the stone-banked lobe is on a south-facing slope (Grab, 2004). It has been suggested that contemporary frost penetration is likely to proceed beyond 50 cm depth for the stone-banked lobe and may even continue to at least 60 cm depth, based on the fact that the downward freeze component is well maintained down to 50 cm depth (Grab, 2004). These frost depths however occur beneath coarse material, which would allow for deeper frost penetration (Harris and Pedersen, 1998; Sumner, 2003).

Temperature data presented in Chapter 8 for Nhlangeni suggests that it is not cold enough for periglacial conditions to exist at the present time. However, during the LGM, temperatures are thought to have decreased between 5°C and 7°C (Heaton *et al.*, 1986; Talma and Vogel, 1992; Partridge *et al.*, 1999; Tyson and Partridge, 2000; Grab and Simpson, 2000), which indicates that annual air temperatures in the area would have been around -1.3°C on the south-facing slope at 3200 m a.s.l. and 2.7°C on the north-facing slope at 2650 m a.s.l., given a 6°C drop, which places the area within the periglacial domain. The north- and south-facing slopes at 2650 m a.s.l. are at the boundary of the 3°C periglacial limit suggested by French (1996), which indicates that this would have been the limit of periglacial activity in the Drakensberg during the LGM. Assuming an average global environmental lapse rate of 0.55°C/100 m (Meyer, 1992), the contemporary mean annual summit temperature at Thabana Ntlenyana would be 3.2°C, and hence temperatures during the LGM with a 6°C temperature reduction would have been around -2.8°C at this location, which concurs with findings by Grab (2002).

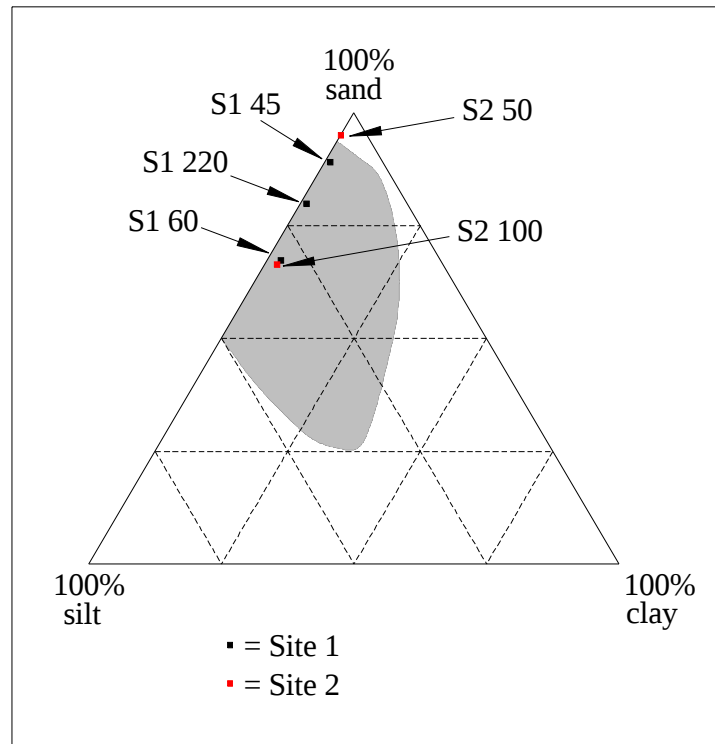
As would be expected, the south-facing slope is colder than the north-facing slope, particularly at 3200 m a.s.l. (Table 8.11), which suggests that periglacial processes would have been more active on these slopes. Snow cover on south-facing slopes is also more prominent than on north-facing slopes in the area (Grab, 1999b; Mulder and Grab, 2002), which would affect the amount of water available for solifluction and slope wash processes during spring (Harrison, 2002). The wide valleys also have gentle gradients and are less shaded against insolation, and are thus not conducive to the development of long-lasting snow patches, as opposed to incised valleys with steep slopes, which allow snow patches to develop (Harrison, 2002).

Colluvial mantles in the Lesotho Highlands dominate the steeper south-facing valley sides (Boelhouwers and Sumner, 2003). These mantles extend down to valley floors and are normally 2 m to 3 m in depth; however they can reach 15 m to 20 m in depth (Boelhouwers *et al.*, 2002). These mantles may show organically darkened a/b horizons and primarily constitute slope material (Sumner, 2003). Colluvial mantles which extend to the valley floors along the Sehonghong River are similar to those found in a few valleys to the south (Boelhouwers *et al.*, 2002). The colluvial sediments investigated by Sumner (2003) a few kilometres east of the Sehonghong site are made up of sand and gravel, whilst silt and clay make up less than 10%. Coarse gravel is most predominant in the upper 20 cm of the colluvial deposits and is considerably greater than that for the underlying layer (Sumner, 2003). This is very similar to the particle size characteristics of the Sehonghong Sites 1 and 2, which contain <11% silt and clay in the upper horizon, where gravel is the main constituent (Figures 8.9, 8.10 and Table 8.1). In addition, the debris mantles described by Boelhouwers *et al.* (2002) a few kilometres south of the Sehonghong deposits are very similar to those sampled at Sites 1 and 2, which contain a clastic horizon ranging between 20 cm and 70 cm in depth, underlain by a much finer sediment (Figures 8.6 and 8.7). It has been suggested that mass wasting probably took place during the LGM under conditions where snow cover was largely absent (Boelhouwers *et al.*, 2002).

It is suggested that the colluvial mantles which occur on the south-facing slopes along the Sehonghong River have formed through a number of periglacial slope processes operating both synergistically and on their own, which have subsequently created a

deposit, which represents a complex response to mass-wasting processes. It is further suggested that three distinct episodes of geomorphic activity have contributed to the formation of the colluvial mantles present on the south-facing slopes of the valley. Firstly, it is suggested that the lower units formed as a combination of mass wasting processes, including solifluction and debris flows, which is represented in the poorly sorted, angular debris, with downslope fabrics and where stratification is more or less absent. Secondly, it is suggested that the upper coarse gravelly layer was also formed as a result of mass wasting processes, however under different climatic conditions which enabled the mobilisation of larger clasts. Finally, a period of fluvial incision took place and exposed these sediments. The different process mechanisms for the formation of the two units are further reinforced in Figure 9.11, which indicates that the sediment at Site 2, sampled at 50 cm depth, falls outside the envelope for active solifluction sediments suggested by Harris (1987), whilst the sediment sampled at Site 1 at 45 cm depth falls just within the envelope. Alternatively, the sediments within the lower unit fall well within the solifluction envelope.

The different process mechanisms which formed these deposits would have operated under very different climatic conditions. It is suggested that the lower unit of finer sediment was deposited under periglacial conditions, enabling frost creep and solifluction processes to transport material downslope. This theory is reinforced by the presence of encircling silt cappings at 220 cm depth at Site 1 (Figure 8.19), which indicates that gelifluction processes dominated (c.f. Van Vliet-Lanoë, 1985b, 1987). These encircling cappings occur as a result of soil saturation from melting ice lenses and late-lying snow during the thaw phase (Elliot, 1996). In contrast, the surface cappings which occur at Site 2 at 100 cm depth are formed by frost creep where moisture supply is limited (Van Vliet-Lanoë, 1985b), once again indicating the varied nature of mass wasting processes which took place at this site. In order for the material in the upper coarse gravelly unit to be transported downslope, more powerful processes would have been necessary. It is suggested that more intense gelifluction processes would have been necessary to mobilise the size of material present in the upper gravelly unit, and hence implies deeper frost penetration associated with colder temperatures.



**Figure 9.11** Ternary plot of sand-silt-clay for the matrix component of the Sehonghong Site 1 and 2 deposit compared to the textural envelope for active solifluction (after Harris, 1981a).

### 9.12.2 Deposits on the north-facing slope

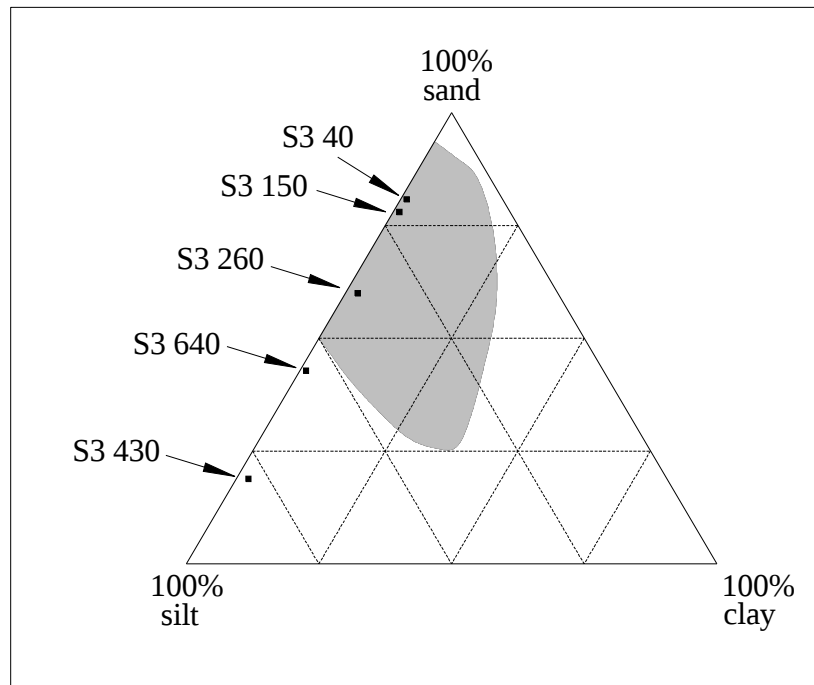
In order to help identify a process origin for the deposit located on the north-facing slope of the Sehonghong River Valley, all morphological and sedimentological characteristics have been summarised in terms of whether they are typical attributes of the possible process mechanisms suggested for the formation of the deposit (Tables 9.7 and 9.8). An individual table has been devised for the upper and lower units at Site 3, as it is suggested from the sedimentological results that these may be the product of different processes. The upper units of coarse gravel possess only the fabric characteristics of mudflows, the morphological attributes of a fluvial terrace and none of the attributes of a landslide. However, these gravels possess all but the morphological attributes of debris flows and glacial deposits and all attributes typical to solifluction deposits. It is therefore suggested, based on the similarities between the gravelly units and the sedimentology of the deposits on the south-facing slope, that these are colluvial sediments, whilst the lower silt units represent a different process mechanism. The different processes involved in the deposition of the upper and lower units is further reinforced in Figure 9.12, where the matrix sampled from the upper

**Table 9.7** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the Sehonghong Site 3 upper unit north-facing deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow/avalanche     | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | Debris deposit             |
| Landslide                 | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ×              | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ×              | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ?      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | Solifluction/head deposit  |
| Glacial                   | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ?               | ?              | ✓              | Till                       |
| Fluvial                   | ✓               | ×                | ×       | ×      | ?               | ?              | ×              | Fluvial terrace            |

**Table 9.8** Suitability of geomorphic processes and landform types for the Sehonghong Site 3 lower unit north-facing deposit attributes.

|                           | Morph-<br>ology | Particle<br>Size | Sorting | Fabric | Eigen-<br>value | Clast<br>shape | Round-<br>ness |                            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Geomorphic Process</i> |                 |                  |         |        |                 |                |                | <i>Geomorphic Landform</i> |
| Debris flow/avalanche     | ×               | ×                | ✓       | ✓      | ×               | ×              | ×              | Debris deposit             |
| Landslide                 | ×               | ×                | ?       | ✓      | ?               | ×              | ×              | Landslide                  |
| Mudflow/slide             | ×               | ×                | ?       | ×      | ?               | ×              | ×              | Mudflow/mudslide           |
| Solifluction              | ✓               | ×                | ✓       | ×      | ×               | ×              | ×              | Solifluction/head deposit  |
| Glacial                   | ×               | ✓                | ✓       | ✓      | ✓               | ✓              | ✓              | Till                       |
| Fluvial                   | ✓               | ✓                | ✓       | ×      | ?               | ✓              | ✓              | Fluvial terrace            |



**Figure 9.12** Ternary plot of sand-silt-clay for the matrix component of the Sehonghong Site 3 deposit compared to the textural envelope for active solifluction (after Harris, 1981a).

units fall within the solifluction envelope, whilst the sediment sampled within the silty unit falls outside it.

The lower unit does not possess the morphology, particle size, eigenvalue, shape or roundness of debris flows or any of the typical attributes of mudflows. The lower unit also only possesses the fabric characteristics of landslides and the morphology and sorting of solifluction deposits. In contrast, the lower unit possesses all but the morphological characteristics of tills and all but the fabric characteristics of fluvial deposits. The variability of tills may once again reflect the similarities between the glacial and fluvial characteristics. However, as stated previously, due to an absence of glacial landforms in the area, it is not envisaged that glaciers occupied the area during the LGM. It is therefore suggested that the lower silt units are of fluvial origin. However, the lack of upstream imbrication for these lower silt units suggests that this is not a channel deposit.

The lower unit of the Sehonghong Site 3 deposit contains >56% silt (Table 8.1), suggesting that processes capable of transporting larger material did not take place at the time of deposition in comparison to the south-facing deposits. It is suggested that the presence of two tributary streams in close proximity to the north-facing deposits played an important role in transporting sediment (Figure 9.13). Processes such as sheet flow/slope wash may have been initiated, possibly as a result of thin regolith cover during the summer months and the presence of a frozen layer during the winter months. Slope wash may be particularly effective in periglacial regions as the frozen soil prevents infiltration and favours surface run off (French 1996). It has been suggested in section 9.12.1 that areas above 2650 m a.s.l. would have fallen within the periglacial domain on both north- and south-facing slopes; therefore the seasonal freezing of the ground may have played an important role in the amount of surface runoff. Moisture for runoff may also be supplied by the melting of snow and melting of ice as the active layer thaws (French, 1996). The slightly higher temperatures experienced on the north-facing slopes may have increased diurnal thawing, which would have contributed greater amounts of moisture to the soil. Sheet flow sediments have been described as poorly sorted (Daniels, 2003), which is similar to sorting within the lower silt unit at Sehonghong Site 3 (Table 8.2).

The presence of gravel within the silt unit as indicated in Figure 8.8 suggests that processes were periodically sufficient to transport larger particles; however the mean a-axis of these clasts is only 4.7 cm, which is comparatively small. It is suggested that sheet flow transported the silts downslope, accumulating in the valley bottom where there would have been a relatively shallow accumulation of water. The clasts may then have rotated parallel to the slope as flow became more turbulent. This sheet flow would have preferentially been channelled in the tributary streams, thus maximising the transport of sediment downslope. This is further reinforced by the more rounded nature of the clasts sampled in the silt unit, which suggests abrasion and may well be attributed to fluvial processes. This area between the tributary deposits is also an area of preferential contemporary wetland development (Figure 9.13), further suggesting that these channels are an important source of groundwater. There is a lack of any pedogenic features within the sequence at Site 3, which suggests relatively high aggradation rates, which inhibit soil development (Daniels, 2003). It has been suggested that the threshold for aggradation rates that inhibit pedogenesis is about 0.5



**Figure 9.13** A view of the Sehonghong Site 3 (obtained from Google Earth).

cm year<sup>-1</sup> (Daniels, 2003), implying that rates would have been greater than that at Sehonghong Site 3.

The difference between south- and north-facing slopes in South Africa has been described by Van Rheede van Oudtshoorn (1988) and Watson *et al.* (1984). Sediments on south-facing slopes are predominantly unconsolidated, particle size ranges from large boulders to fine sand and gravel and these sediments are highly erodible once the protective vegetation cover has been removed (Van Rheede van Oudtshoorn, 1988), whilst the north-facing slopes consist of colluvial deposits containing generally finer material (<2mm) (Watson *et al.*, 1984). This concurs with the findings in this research, where the south-facing slope deposits consist of gravel with large boulders, whilst the north-facing slope sediments also contain high percentages of silt (Table 8.1). The mobilisation of these gravels on a north-facing slope as a result of increased run off corresponds with suggestions made for the process origins for the north-facing Sehonghong deposits. Further sedimentary

sequences at Golden Gate have been described as valley fill deposits incised by the Little Caledon River, consisting of unsorted matrix-supported diamicts, clast-supported diamicts with subangular clasts up to 1 m in length, fluvially reworked deposits laid as gravel and sand beds and palaeosols (Marker, 1994b). It has been suggested that these diamicts were deposited during the LGM, based on dates obtained from palaeosols underlying these diamicts (Marker, 1995). Further evidence of clastic sediments overlying organic sediments has been observed at Tlaeeng Pass in Lesotho on north- and northwest-facing slopes (Hanvey and Marker, 1994). These occur in hollows and have subsequently been incised by fluvial processes (Hanvey and Marker, 1994). It is suggested that the diamicts are similar to solifluction material and that the sediments originated from slope weathering and were subsequently transported downslope by cryogenic processes (Hanvey and Marker, 1994). These matrix-supported and clast-supported diamicts are very similar to those described for both the south- and north-facing slopes along the Sehonghong River.

### **9.13 RADIOCARBON DATING**

Material tested for radiocarbon dating was soil organic matter (SOM), which is generally introduced into the soil as either root material or organic detritus at the surface. There were very small amounts of SOM in the samples, suggesting a slow biological turnover. The calibrated ages for the five linear deposits range between 13 820 yrs BP and 20 530 yrs BP (Table 9.9). There is a fairly wide range in ages within the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung deposit and between deposits; however the younger dates may reflect the intrusion of slightly younger soil organic matter at the depths sampled, or older material which accumulated prior to deposition. These ages probably significantly postdate the deposition of the deposits, given that they represent soil which was picked up at the front of the glacier and subsequently deposited within the moraine. They indicate that the moraines were formed towards the end of the Last glacial period after 13 820 yrs BP.

Recent work by Holgrem *et al.* (2003) from a stalagmite in the Makapansgat Valley suggests that although maximum cooling occurred around 17 500 yrs BP in southern Africa, the time period between 15 000 yrs BP to 13 500 yrs BP was also a cold period and renewed warming occurred after about 13 500 yrs BP. It is possible that the secondary ridges at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung (Figures 5.1 and 5.2), Sekhokong Site 1

**Table 9.9** A summary table of the radiocarbon and calibrated ages for the study sites.

| Sites                  | Radiocarbon Age yrs BP | Calibrated Age yrs BP |
|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Tsatsa-La-Mangaung     | 13 790 ± 110           | 16 500                |
|                        | 17 300 ± 100           | 20 530                |
|                        | 11 700 ± 70            | 13 820                |
| Sekhokong Site 1       | 12370 ± 60             | 14 700                |
| Sekhokong Site 2       | 16270 ± 70             | 19 350                |
| Leqooa western deposit | 14 400 ± 60            | 17 200                |
| Leqooa eastern deposit | 12 890 ± 60            | 15 390                |
| Sehonghong             | 19 800 ± 580           | 23 055                |
|                        | 25 900 ± 670           | 27 410                |
|                        | 36 600 ± 1400          | 43 085                |

(Figures 6.1 and 6.2) and Leqooa Valley (Figures 7.2 and 7.3) may reflect these two cold periods. It is possible that these secondary ridges reflect the former extent of palaeoglaciers, which were however not well developed due to limited sediment supply, which only became available towards the end of a relatively short glacial period.

Further evidence for a cold period prior to 13 500 yrs BP has been proposed by Marker (1994a). Sedimentary sequences have been described from a north-facing slope near Sani Top and reveal organic sediments overlying diamicts or gravels (Marker, 1994a). The organic sediments yielded dates between  $1000 \pm 40$  yrs BP and  $13\,490 \pm 130$  yrs BP, and the change from gravels to peat in the sedimentary sequences has been attributed to a change in sedimentation from inorganic to organic (Marker, 1994a). It is suggested that the thick gravel horizons indicate cold, dry conditions, which prevented organic accretion and enabled higher-intensity runoff as a result of reduced vegetation cover, which in turn led to increased slope movement (Marker, 1994a, 1995). It was therefore suggested that the period prior to 13 500 yrs BP was colder, encouraging the mobilization of the gravels, whilst the period 13 500 yrs BP to 9000 yrs BP was warmer and wetter, as indicated by a phase of organic sedimentation (Marker, 1994a).

The ages obtained for the deposits also correspond well with documented glacial advances in Southern Hemisphere regions such as the South American Andes (Mercer, 1972, 1976; Porter, 1981a; Denton *et al.*, 1999), Mount Kenya (Mahaney, 1987; Mahaney *et al.*, 1991, 2000), and the New Zealand Alps (Moar, 1980; Denton *et al.*, 1999; Hellstrom *et al.*, 1998; Benn and Evans, 1998; Kirkbride and Brazier, 1998). Final deglaciation in the South American Andes began after 11 000 yrs BP (Mercer, 1976; Heusser, 1993; Heusser *et al.*, 1999; McCulloch *et al.*, 2000), after 12 000 yrs BP in the New Zealand Alps (Chinn, 1983; Hellstrom *et al.*, 1998), and after 12 500 yrs BP on Mount Kenya, East Africa, where moraines have been dated at 12 500 yrs BP (Mahaney *et al.*, 1991).

The radiocarbon dates obtained by Prof. Stefan Grab at Sehonghong Site 3 (Table 8.10) range from 23 055 yrs BP to 43 085 yrs BP. These dates represent a minimum age, and the oldest age may also represent an infinite age beyond the 40 000 year limit of  $^{14}\text{C}$  dating. The unit that has been identified at 8.5 m depth and dated at 43 085 yrs BP is attributed to a relatively wet period with wetland development (Grab *et al.* in prep). An overlying gravely unit indicates a drier period, with a possible renewed phase of wetland development at 27 410 yrs BP (Table 8.10). It is then suggested that fluvial sedimentation occurred before a renewed wetland development period at 23 055 yrs BP (Grab *et al.* in prep), which concurs with a more humid phase suggested between 25 000 yrs BP and 21 000 yrs BP in southern Africa (Tyson, 1986). Although the ages are in stratigraphic order, their time of deposition cannot necessarily be attributed to a specific depositional period being cold or warm as the organic matter tested may be older than the time at which it was deposited, nevertheless, the alternating units of organic sand and gravel are believed to indicate wetter or drier periods (Grab *et al.* in prep). In previous studies, the presence of coarse-grained with fine-grained organic rich sediments has been attributed to episodic high-energy sediment transport events (Goodbred and Hine, 1995; Goodbred *et al.*, 1998; Mitsch and Gosselink, 1986). It is therefore problematic to try and relate the alternating units of sand and gravel to past climatic events.

Radiocarbon ages obtained from colluvial deposits in Swaziland range between  $31\,420 \pm 780$  yrs BP and  $11\,660 \pm 50$  yrs BP, which indicates that colluviation

commenced after 40 000 yrs BP, whilst it terminated between 12 000 yrs BP and 10 000 yrs BP (Watson *et al.*, 1984), which corresponds with the ages obtained for the Sehonghong Site 3 deposit (Table 9.1). It has been suggested that colluviation is initiated by the onset of drier conditions, which causes a reduction in vegetation cover, therefore allowing the movement of previously weathered material (Watson *et al.*, 1984). This indicates a drier climate than at present during the deposition of colluvial material on both the south- and north-facing slopes at Sehonghong. It has further been suggested that the most obvious period for a drier climate would have been around the LGM (Watson *et al.*, 1984).

#### **9.14 SUMMARY**

The linear slope deposits at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley have been attributed to glacial processes based on their morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological characteristics. It is suggested that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits are marginal moraines, whilst the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is a debris flow deposit which formed as a result of melting of a small glacier. In contrast, the Sehonghong deposits have been attributed to various mass wasting processes formed under a various climatic regimes. These deposits, along with the considerable literature available on colluvial and periglacial deposits in the Drakensberg, indicate that the environment during the LGM in the high Drakensberg was predominantly periglacial. The general consensus is that South Africa was never glaciated during the Quaternary (Tyson, 1986; Preston-Whyte and Tyson, 1988; Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000; Deacon and Lancaster, 1988; de Villiers, 2000); however, the linear deposits identified as moraines in four localities indicate that small glaciers did exist in this region, forming moraines dated back to the late glacial period. It is not suggested that widespread glaciation occurred in the Drakensberg during the LGM, rather that glaciers formed a minor component within a periglacial land system.

# CHAPTER 10

## Glacier reconstruction

### 10.1 INTRODUCTION

It has been suggested in Chapter 9 that the deposits at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley are lateral moraines formed by small glaciers, whilst the deposit at Sekhokong Site 2 is a debris flow deposit, which was initiated by the melting of a small glacier. In order to quantify such hypotheses, it is possible to model the palaeo-reconstruction of former glaciers, and further verify the identification of these features. This glacier reconstruction work will permit the differentiation of whether the deposits were formed in a passive way by snowbanks, or actively by glaciers (Carr, 2001).

### 10.2 CLIMATE DURING THE LAST GLACIAL MAXIMUM

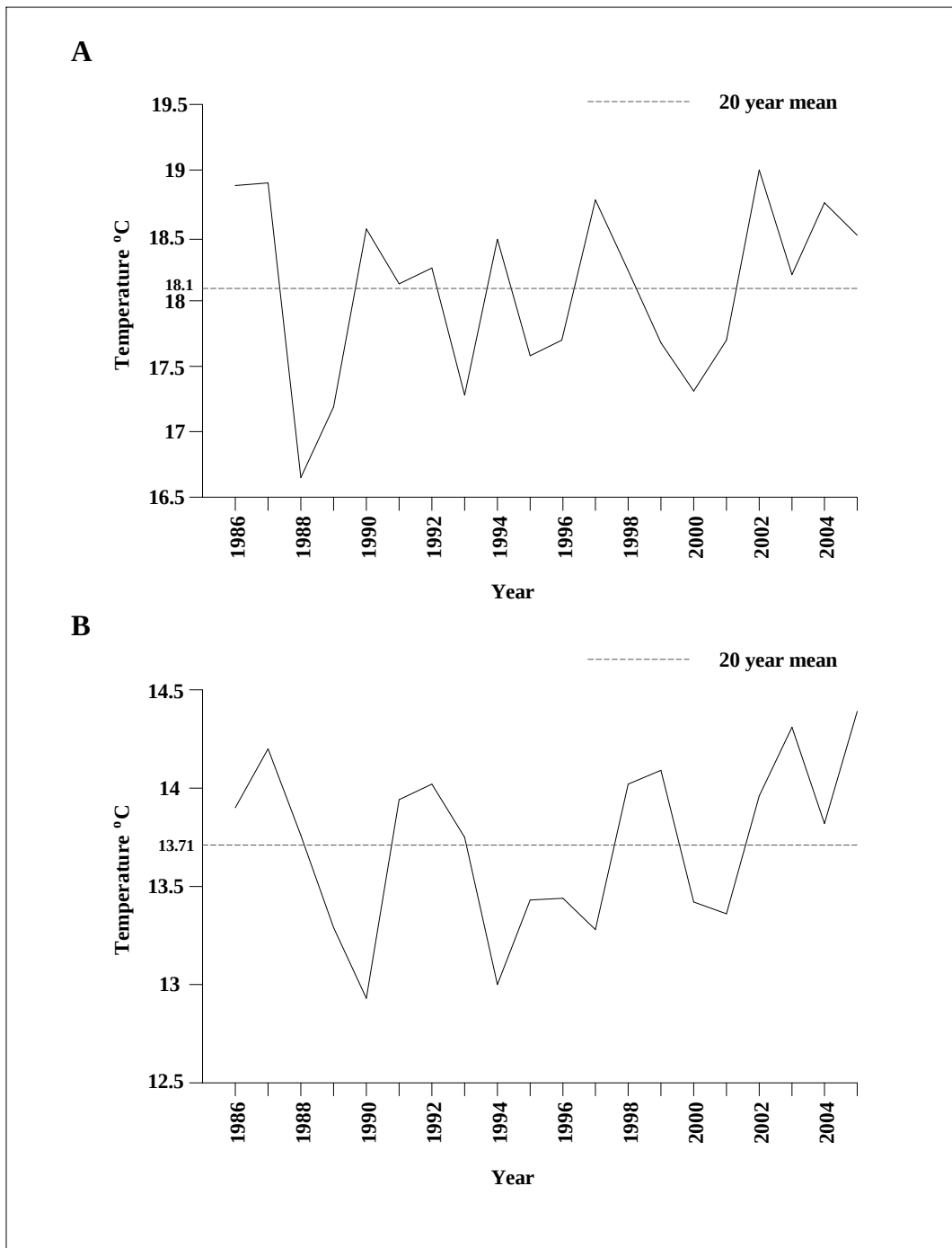
Temperature data have been recorded for Sani Top (2878 m a.s.l.), which is approximately 2 km from the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung site (Table 10.1). Unfortunately the data loggers at the Leqooa Valley site were stolen and thus extrapolations will be made from the Sani top data. Only the summer months are taken into account (December, January and February for the Southern Hemisphere) (c.f. Ohmura *et al.*, 1992), because there is a close, non-linear relationship between accumulation and mean summer temperature at the equilibrium line (Humlum, 1997). Data for the period 2002 to 2003 and 2004 to 2005 are missing due to faulty data loggers. The average temperature for the four available years is 10°C and it should be noted that the temperature appears to be rising over the years. Temperature records for Shaleburn (29°48'0"S, 29°21'0"E at 1614 m a.s.l.), which is the closest station to Sani Top are provided in Figure 10.1. These records illustrate that the years 2000/2001 and 2001/2002 were below the 20 year average, whilst the four subsequent years were above average. This suggests that the temperature records for Sani Top are a reasonably accurate representation of the average temperature during the logging period.

**Table 10.1** Summer temperature data for Sani Top.

|                | 2000-2001   | 2001-2002   | 2003-2004    | 2005-2006    |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| December       | 10.35       | 9.30        | 10.23        | 9.53         |
| January        | 10.00       | 10.86       | 10.12        | 11.00        |
| February       | 8.93        | 9.27        | 9.67         | 10.54        |
| <b>Average</b> | <b>9.76</b> | <b>9.81</b> | <b>10.01</b> | <b>10.36</b> |

Some of the first ridges to be discovered in the high Drakensberg and attributed to glacial processes were located at Nhlangeni and described by Grab (1996a). The average yearly temperature data at this site have been presented in Chapter 8, however mean summer temperature is presented here for the north and south-facing slope in order to compare with the linear deposit sites (Table 10.2 and 10.3). Temperatures at 2900 m a.s.l. on the south-facing slope average 10.7°C for the period 1999 to 2001, whilst they average 10.8°C at the same elevation on the north-facing slope. These temperatures compare well with the data from Sani Top. At an altitude of 3200 m a.s.l. on the south-facing slope, the mean summer temperature for the period 1999 to 2003 is 9°C, which is 1.7°C colder than at 2900 m a.s.l., indicating a lapse rate of 0.57°C/100 m. This compares well to the lapse rate of 0.55°C/100 m suggested by Meyer (1992). In contrast, on the north-facing slope, the difference in average temperature between 2900 m a.s.l. and 3200 m a.s.l. is 2.3°C, indicating a lapse rate of 0.77°C/100 m. There was a substantial difference in mean annual air temperatures between the north- and south-facing slope as indicated in Chapter 9, where the north-facing slope was warmer. However, the mean summer temperatures indicate that there is no real variation between the north- and south-facing slopes at Nhlangeni. The mean summer temperatures at Nhlangeni may be a slight underestimation as the recording time period was below average compared to the 20 year mean (Figure 10.1).

Southern African temperature decreases during the LGM are thought to have been between 5°C and 7°C (Heaton *et al.*, 1986; Talma and Vogel, 1992; Partridge *et al.*, 1999; Tyson and Partridge, 2000; Grab and Simpson, 2000; Holmgren *et al.*, 2003), whilst precipitation along the Drakensberg was reduced by approximately 30% (Partridge *et al.*, 1999; Tyson and Partridge, 2000). Elsewhere in the Southern Hemisphere, LGM temperatures were depressed by 6°C to 8°C (Barnola *et al.*, 1987; Denton *et al.*, 1999), and thus the suggested southern African decreases are not exceptional.



**Figure 10.1** A 20 year temperature record for Shaleburn. A = Mean annual summer temperature (December to February), B = Average yearly temperature.

**Table 10.2** Summer temperature data for Nhlangeni south-facing slope.

| Site          | Month          | 1999-2000    | 2000-2001    | 2001-2002   | 2002-2003   |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 2650 m a.s.l. | December       | 11.93        | 12.25        | -           | -           |
|               | January        | 11.09        | 12.18        | -           | -           |
|               | February       | 12.62        | 11.33        | -           | -           |
|               | <b>Average</b> | <b>11.88</b> | <b>11.92</b> | -           | -           |
| 2900 m a.s.l. | December       | 10.57        | 11.28        | -           | -           |
|               | January        | 9.76         | 11.17        | -           | -           |
|               | February       | 11.20        | 10.17        | -           | -           |
|               | <b>Average</b> | <b>10.51</b> | <b>10.87</b> | -           | -           |
| 3200 m a.s.l. | December       | 8.41         | 9.07         | 8.37        | 8.51        |
|               | January        | 8.01         | 9.38         | 9.97        | 10.29       |
|               | February       | 9.30         | 8.00         | 8.70        | 10.27       |
|               | <b>Average</b> | <b>8.57</b>  | <b>8.82</b>  | <b>9.01</b> | <b>9.69</b> |

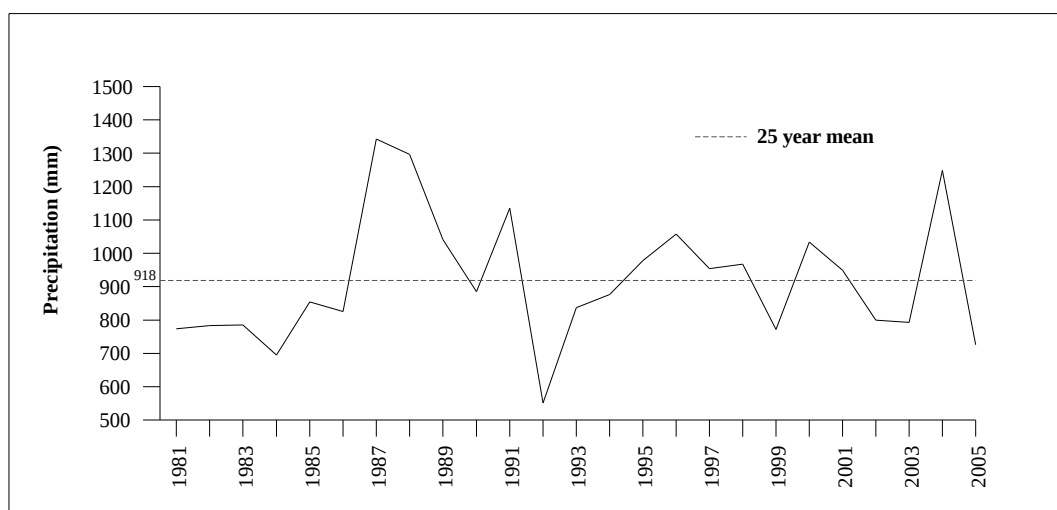
**Table 10.3** Summer temperature data for Nhlangeni north-facing slope.

| Site          | Month          | 1999-2000    | 2000-2001    | 2001-2002 | 2002-2003   |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| 2650 m a.s.l. | December       | 11.76        | 12.39        | -         | -           |
|               | January        | 10.80        | 11.90        | -         | -           |
|               | February       | 12.26        | 10.97        | -         | -           |
|               | <b>Average</b> | <b>11.61</b> | <b>11.75</b> | -         | -           |
| 2900 m a.s.l. | December       | 10.64        | 11.14        | -         | -           |
|               | January        | 9.96         | 11.15        | -         | -           |
|               | February       | 11.58        | 10.29        | -         | -           |
|               | <b>Average</b> | <b>10.72</b> | <b>10.86</b> | -         | -           |
| 3200 m a.s.l. | December       | 8.12         | 8.96         | -         | 8.45        |
|               | January        | 7.65         | 9.47         | -         | 10.32       |
|               | February       | 9.49         | 8.37         | -         | 10.47       |
|               | <b>Average</b> | <b>8.42</b>  | <b>8.93</b>  | -         | <b>9.75</b> |

An average temperature decrease of 6°C is assumed for the purpose of this research; therefore mean temperatures at Sani Top would have been 4°C during the LGM. The mean summer temperature at Nhlangeni would have been 5.9°C and 5.7°C at 2650 m a.s.l. for the south- and north-facing slope respectively, 4.7°C and 4.8°C at 2900 m a.s.l. for the south- and north-facing slopes and 3°C at 3200 m a.s.l. for both the south- and north-facing slope. Assuming an average global environmental lapse rate of 0.55°C/100 m (Meyer, 1992), it is also possible to calculate the temperature at the ELA for each linear deposit site (see further sections for ELA calculations).

Contemporary meteorological data in the Drakensberg and Lesotho are scarce (Boelhouwers and Meiklejohn, 2002), and measured rainfall for the Drakensberg escarpment above 2500 m a.s.l. has, until recently, not existed on record (Nel and Sumner, 2005). All rainfall data for the high Drakensberg obtained in the past are derived by projection from stations at lower altitudes (Tyson *et al.*, 1976; Schulze, 1979) and there have been no records in recent years to verify these estimates (Nel and Sumner, 2005). It has been suggested that contemporary precipitation amounts to between 1500 mm/annum and 1600 mm/annum along the escarpment (Killick, 1963; Schulze, 1979). However, more recently precipitation records for Sani top have been recorded, which suggest that this area receives between 742 mm/annum (Nel and Sumner, 2005) and 821 mm/annum (Sene *et al.*, 1998). These more recent lower precipitation records are regional in the case of Sene *et al.* (1998) and only limited to one year (2002) in the case of Nel and Sumner (2005). This year was particularly drier than average and therefore may not be a true representation of average precipitation (Figure 10.2). Furthermore, the data provided by Nel and Sumner (2005) do not record snowfalls and there are no snowfall records available for the escarpment area (Nel and Sumner, 2005). Inaccuracies in the measurement of rainfall have also been discussed by Nel and Sumner (2005), notably the rain-catch deficiency caused by windy conditions. It has been reported that rain-catch deficiencies are in excess of 8.1% (Schulze, 1979) and may be as much as 20% for windy sites (Rodda, 1967; Schulze, 1979). It is for this reason that an average has been taken from Killick (1963), Schulze (1979), Sene *et al.* (1998) and Nel and Sumner (2005), which amounts to 1170 mm/annum. If precipitation was reduced by 30% during the LGM (Partridge *et al.*, 1999; Tyson and Partridge, 2000), then precipitation at Sani Top could have averaged ca. 820 mm/annum.

Having postulated palaeotemperature and palaeoprecipitation data for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley sites, it is possible to compare these to present-day glaciated regions. Ohmura *et al.* (1992) produced a best-fit climate curve for the ELA of 70 glaciers, which offers opportunities to make deductions on the likely climatic changes required for glaciation at the Drakensberg study sites. Given the palaeoclimatic extrapolations for the Drakensberg, it is possible to plot the likely

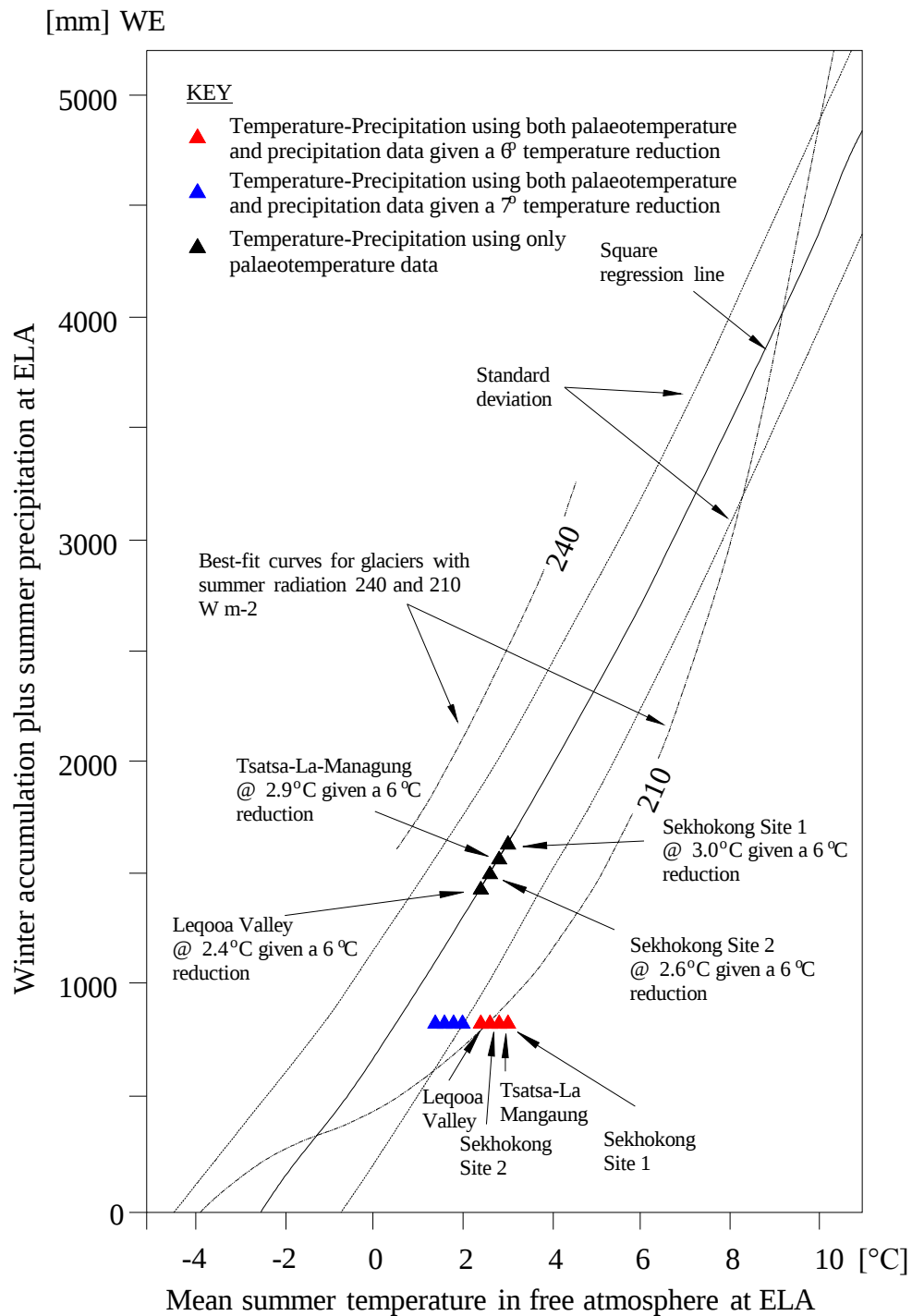


**Figure 10.2** A 25 year precipitation record for Himeville (29°45'0"S, 29°30'0"E at 1579 m a.s.l.), which is the closest recording station to the study sites.

LGM summer temperature and annual precipitation for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley sites on the ELA curves produced by Ohmura *et al.* (1992) (Figure 10.3).

The red triangles indicate that the four study sites fall just outside the best-fit curves for glacier ELAs, assuming a 6°C decrease in temperature and a 30% decrease in precipitation. The black triangles, on the other hand, indicate the necessary precipitation required for glaciers to be sustained given a 6°C temperature depression, which is significantly higher than recorded precipitation data. Nevertheless, either a small decrease in temperature, or a small increase in precipitation would place these sites within the boundaries of the best-fit curves. A 7°C decrease in temperature would satisfy the winter accumulation at the ELA, whilst a total of between 1400 mm and 1600 mm precipitation would be required to sustain glaciers given a 6°C temperature depression.

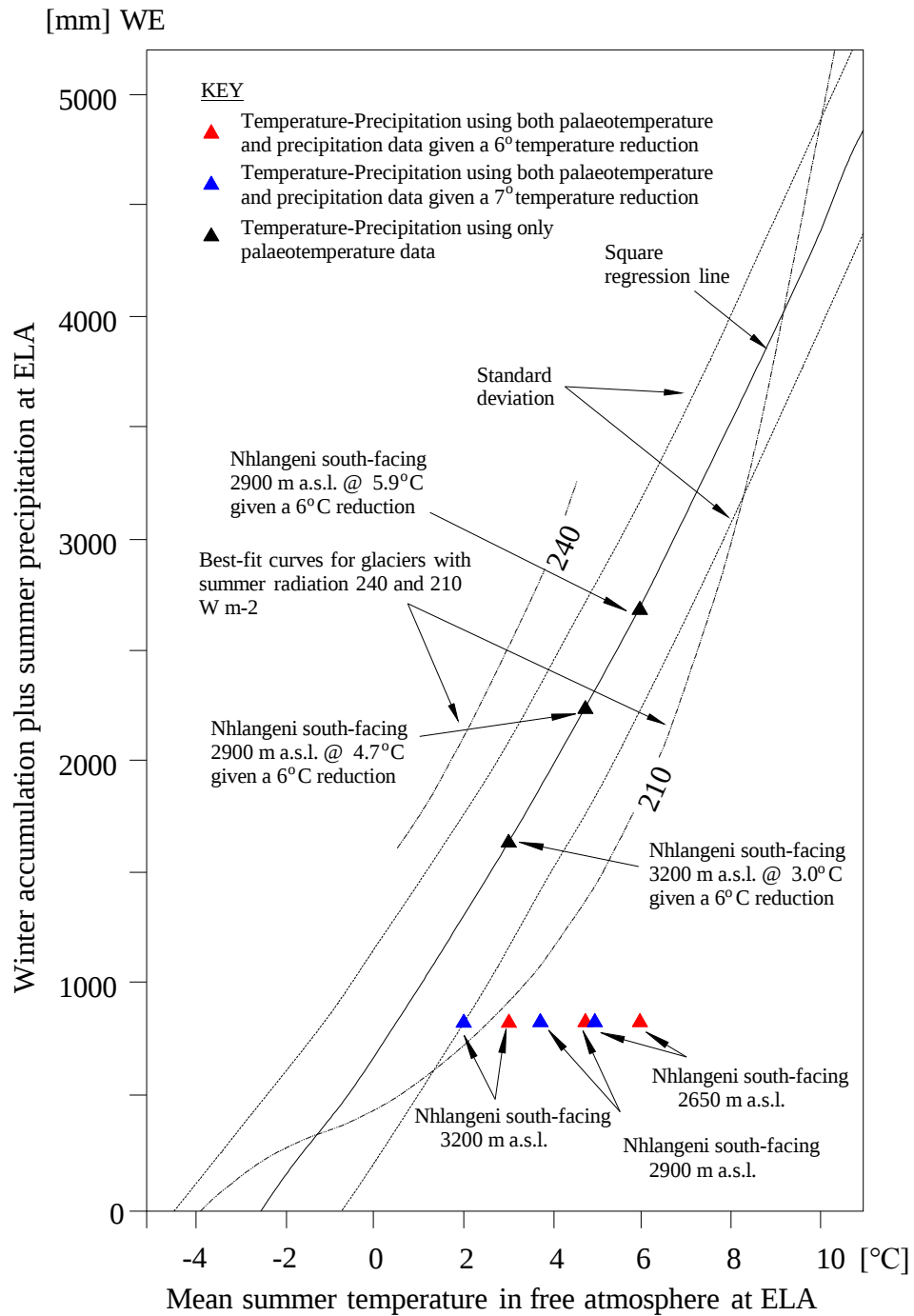
Palaeotemperature and precipitation data for Nhlangeni have also been plotted onto the Ohmura graph in order to give an indication of the difference that altitude and aspect makes with regards to the feasibility of the presence of glaciers at this site. As stated previously, aspect does not affect mean summer temperature at this site, which



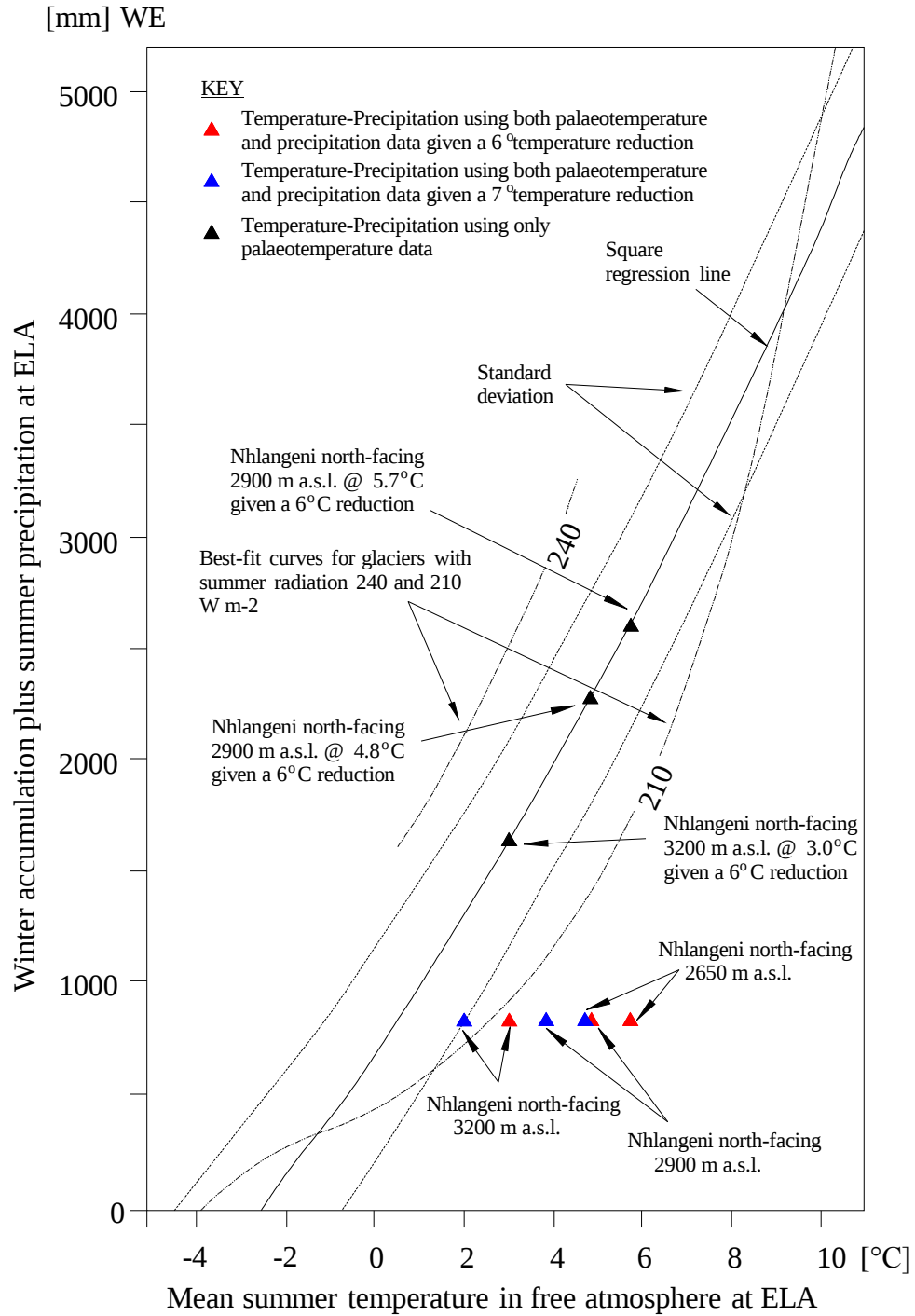
**Figure 10.3** Plotting of the high Drakensberg LGM palaeoclimates for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley sites, with the best-fit climate curve for the ELA of 70 glaciers (after Ohmura *et al.*, 1992).

is clear from Figure 10.4 and 10.5, as these are almost identical. In contrast, the effect of altitude on temperature, and hence the best fit curve of glaciers is clear. Only at 3200 m a.s.l. is Nhlangeni close to the best fit curve, and a 7°C temperature drop would place this site within the envelope for glaciers. In contrast, an 8.7°C and 9.9°C drop in temperature would be required at 2900 m a.s.l. and 2650 m a.s.l. respectively. The required precipitation values are also somewhat unrealistic, given that with a 6°C drop in temperature at the LGM, precipitation would have had to have amounted to 2200 mm and 2700 mm at 2900 m a.s.l. and 2650 m a.s.l. respectively. It is therefore suggested that should glaciers have existed, based on the 6°C drop indicated by proxy data, these would most likely have been at sustained altitudes in excess of 3000 m a.s.l.

Mean summer temperature on modern glaciers is reported to be closely related to winter accumulation at the ELA (Sutherland, 1984; Ballantyne, 1989b; Ohmura *et al.*, 1992; Lie *et al.*, 2003), and it is suggested that proxy evidence in the use of estimating palaeotemperature is significant when identifying snow accumulation (Ballantyne, 2002). In addition, Bakke *et al.* (2005) indicate that the use of temperature to derive former winter precipitation is beneficial in reconstructing former glacier fluctuations. The temperature data collected at Sani Top are believed to be more reliable than the precipitation data. Temperature depreciation during the LGM is based on analyses of dissolved gasses from fossil aquifers (Heaton *et al.*, 1986) and speleothems (Talma and Vogel, 1992; Holgrem *et al.*, 2003) and is believed to be more robust than the estimated isolines of mean precipitation suggested by Partridge (1997), given the marked effects of the escarpment. It has been suggested that using temperature to estimate palaeoprecipitation is significant in reconstructing glacier mass balance (Bakke *et al.*, 2005). The diagram devised by Ohmura *et al.* (1992) summarises the most reliable relationship between temperature and mass loss at the ELA (Carr and Coleman, 2006) and therefore the derived temperature values during the LGM indicate the likely precipitation at the ELA for the four study sites.



**Figure 10.4** Plotting of the high Drakensberg LGM palaeoclimates for the Nhlangeni south-facing slope, with the best-fit climate curve for the ELA of 70 glaciers (after Ohmura *et al.*, 1992).

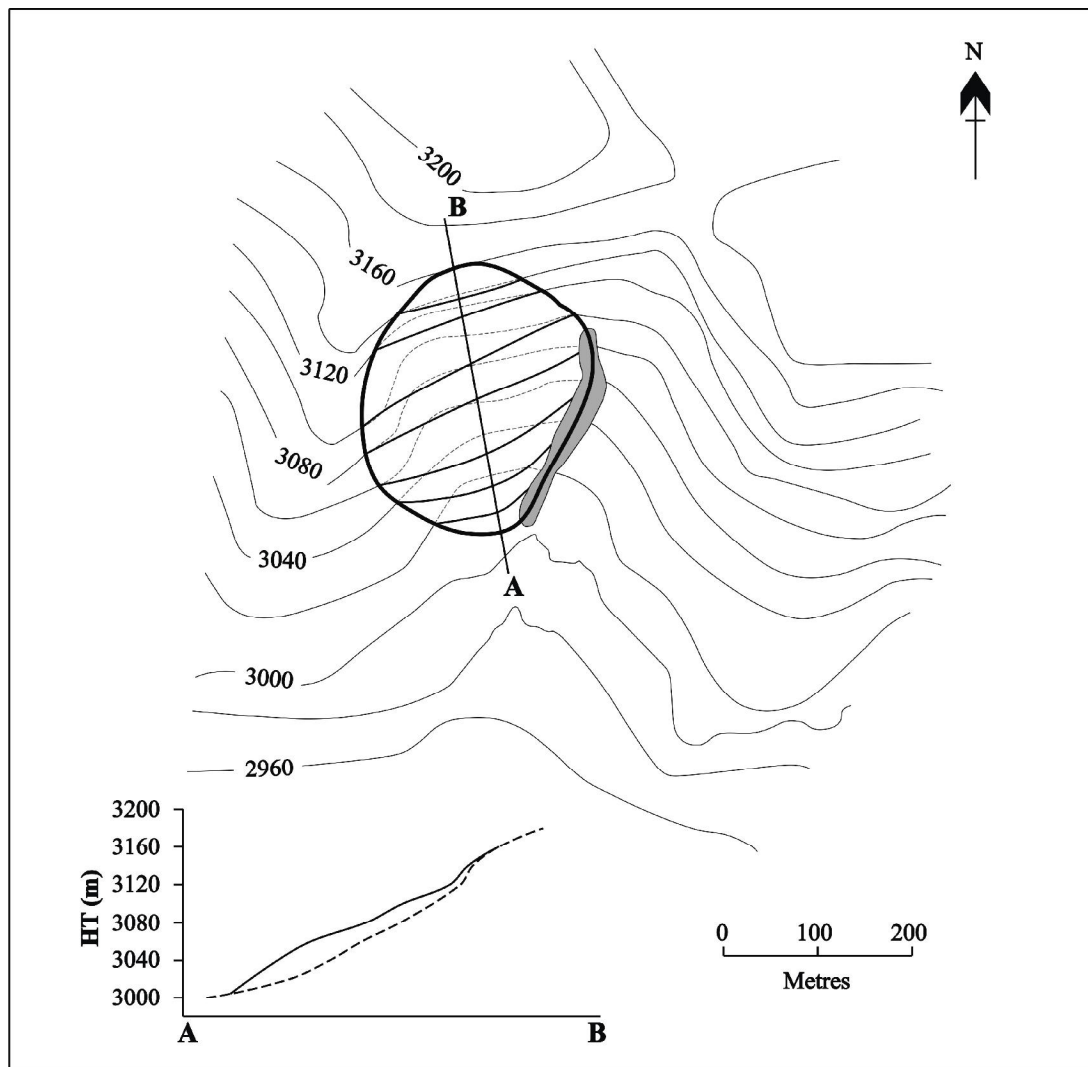


**Figure 10.5** Plotting of the high Drakensberg LGM palaeoclimates for the Nhlangei north-facing slope, with the best-fit climate curve for the ELA of 70 glaciers (after Ohmura *et al.*, 1992).

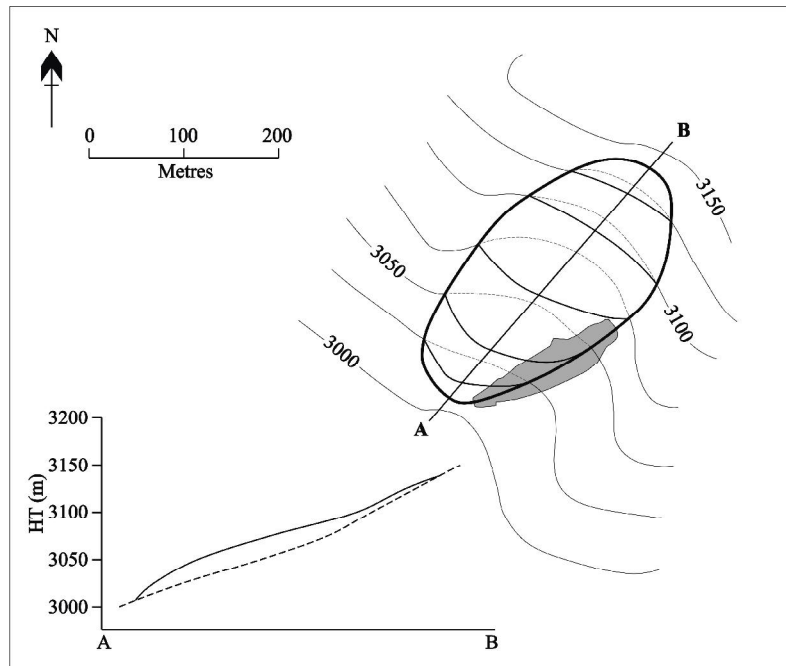
### 10.3 GLACIER RECONSTRUCTION

The reconstructed palaeoglaciers at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley are presented in Figures 10.6 to 10.9. The calculated ablation gradient based on the best-fit curve of Andrews (1972) for each glacier is represented in Table 10.4, whilst the mass balance characteristics of the palaeoglaciers are presented in Table 10.5. The ELA of the former glaciers vary through an altitudinal range of 88 m, whilst the ablation gradients vary from  $4.6 \text{ mm m}^{-1}$  at Leqooa Valley to  $4.9 \text{ mm m}^{-1}$  at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 1. These moderate ablation gradients reflect glacier activity in relatively mild maritime conditions (Schytt, 1967). The average total velocity at the ELA ranges from  $1.15 \text{ m a}^{-1}$  at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung to  $4.5 \text{ m a}^{-1}$  at the Leqooa Valley site. This is comparable with modern analogues, where most glacier velocities range between  $1 \text{ m a}^{-1}$  to  $100 \text{ m a}^{-1}$ , with the exception of surging glaciers and very rapid outlet glaciers (Andrews, 1972). Basal shear stress ranges from 0.50 bars at Sekhokong Site 1 to 0.64 bars at Leqooa Valley, which again falls within the range of modern analogues. Basal shear stress in alpine valley glaciers is usually between 50 kPa and 150 kPa ( $100 \text{ kPa} = 1 \text{ bar}$ ) (Nye, 1952; Murray and Locke, 1989; Paterson, 1994; Menzies, 2002a). Further work on basal shear stress suggests that glacial reconstructions should obey the same physical laws as glaciers today and should therefore have basal shear stress values of between about 50 kPa and 100 kPa over hard substrates (Bennett and Glasser, 1996; Nesje and Dahl, 2000). Shear stresses below 1 bar produce very small rates of strain, whilst above this, they produce larger rates of deformation than those that exist in glaciers and ice sheets (Nye, 1952).

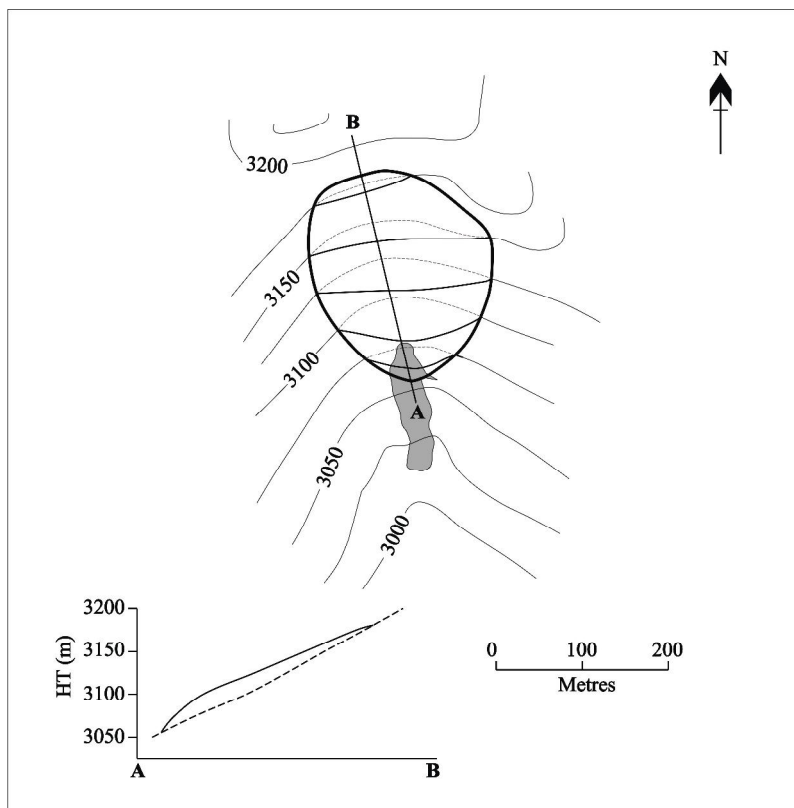
Movement within temperate glaciers is predominantly by basal slip and internal deformation (Dahl *et al.*, 1997). In ice deformation, the ice deforms under its own weight to relieve the internal stresses, and may be described by Glen's flow law (Van der Veen, 1999). Basal sliding becomes important where basal temperatures have reached the pressure melting temperature and subglacial water is present (Van der Veen, 1999). Basal slip has been measured to account for 10% to 90% of total velocity (Andrews, 1975; Paterson, 1981) and will be at a minimum where basal shear stress is at its maximum (Murray and Locke, 1989). More recently, Carr and Coleman



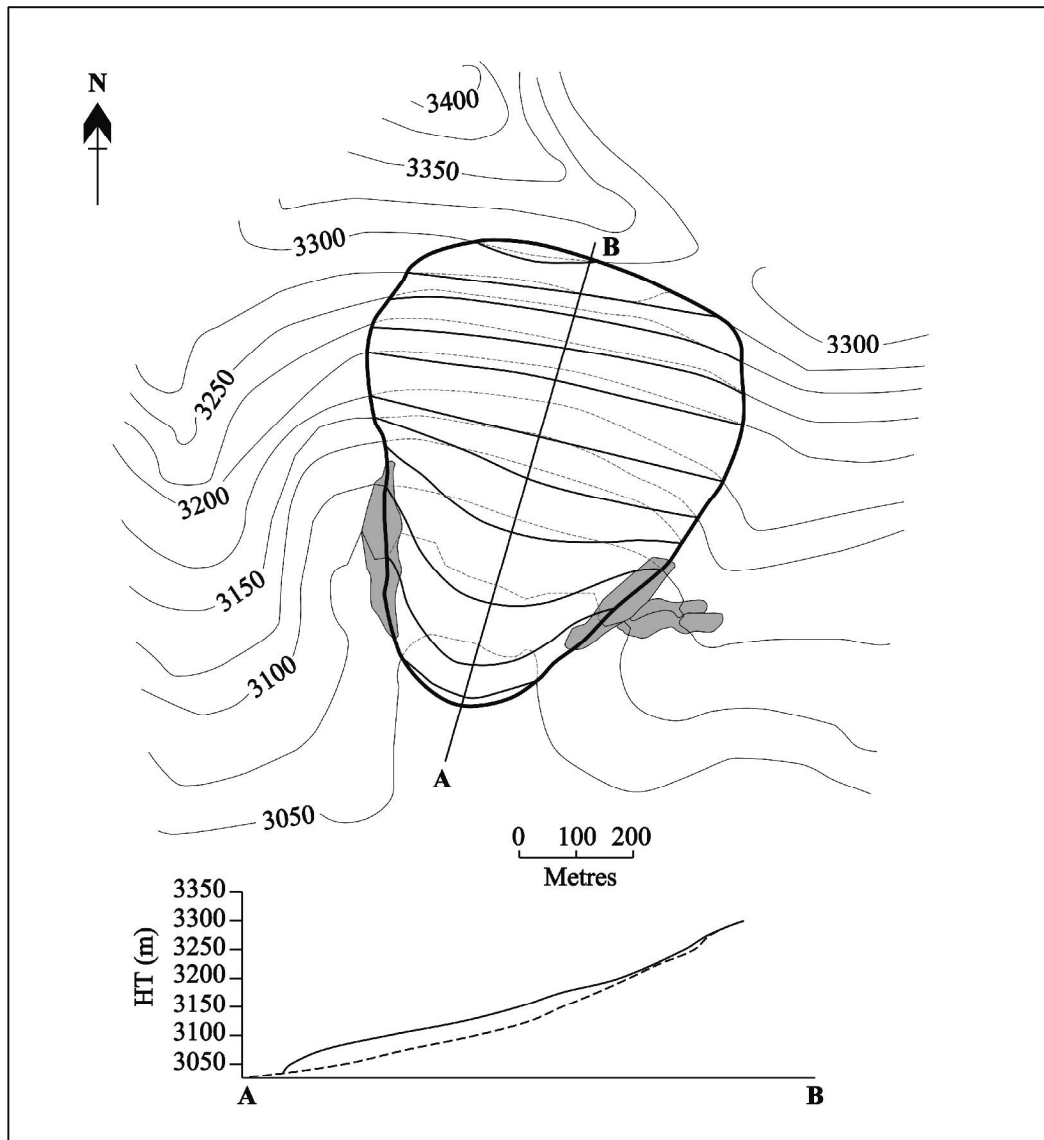
**Figure 10.6** The reconstructed three-dimensional form of the possible palaeoglacier at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung.



**Figure 10.7** The reconstructed three-dimensional form of the possible palaeoglacier at Sekhokong Site 1.



**Figure 10.8** The reconstructed three-dimensional form of the possible palaeoglacier at Sekhokong Site 2.



**Figure 10.9** The reconstructed three-dimensional form of the possible palaeoglacier at Leqooa Valley.

**Table 10.4** Ablation for each contour interval at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Sites 1 and 2 and Leqooa Valley.

| Site               | Contour interval | Ablation (mm) | Ablation (m) | Area (m <sup>2</sup> ) | Ablation (m <sup>3</sup> ) |
|--------------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Tsatsa-La-Mangaung | 3070             | 73.5          | 0.074        | 12347                  | 914                        |
|                    | 3050             | 171.5         | 0.172        | 6703                   | 1153                       |
|                    | 3030             | 268.8         | 0.269        | 4102                   | 1103                       |
|                    | 3012.5           | 355.3         | 0.355        | 1957                   | 695                        |
| Sekhokong Site 1   | 3062.5           | 210.65        | 0.211        | 11296                  | 2383                       |
|                    | 3037.5           | 333.15        | 0.333        | 5444                   | 1813                       |
|                    | 3015             | 455.65        | 0.456        | 1703                   | 777                        |
| Sekhokong Site 2   | 3112.5           | 132           | 0.132        | 9557                   | 1262                       |
|                    | 3087.5           | 252           | 0.252        | 4192                   | 1056                       |
|                    | 3065             | 360           | 0.360        | 926                    | 333                        |
| Leqooa Valley      | 3162.5           | 39.1          | 0.039        | 39735                  | 1550                       |
|                    | 3137.5           | 168.4         | 0.168        | 43109                  | 7242                       |
|                    | 3112.5           | 283.4         | 0.283        | 51707                  | 14633                      |
|                    | 3087.5           | 398.4         | 0.398        | 40970                  | 16306                      |
|                    | 3062.5           | 513.4         | 0.513        | 22682                  | 11636                      |
|                    | 3042.5           | 605.4         | 0.605        | 3068                   | 1856                       |

(2006) have suggested that the potential for ice deformation may exceed the predicted balance velocity of the glacier. Basal slip at Sekhokong Site 1 accounts for 33% of the total velocity, whilst at Leqooa Valley it accounts for 61%. In contrast, at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 2, ice deformation exceeds basal slip, indicating that in order to transfer mass through the equilibrium line, there would have been minimal need for basal slip (Carr and Coleman, 2006). All sites fall within the basal slip range suggested by Andrews (1975), Paterson (1981) and Carr and Coleman (2006). The palaeoglaciers at both Sekhokong sites are comparatively thin to the generally accepted minimum thickness of 30 m for glaciers (Gray, 1962; Shakesby and Matthews, 1993), however it is suggested that these glaciers may still have developed in this region, given that the transformation of snow to ice in temperate climates is rapid (Benn and Evans, 1998; Jania, 2004).

**Table 10.5** Derived mass-balance characteristics at the four sites investigated.

|                                                          | Tsatsa-La-Mangaung | Sekhokong Site1 | Sekhokong Site 2 | Leqooa Valley |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|
| ELA (m)                                                  | 3085               | 3083            | 3140             | 3171          |
| Temperature at ELA (°C)                                  | 2.9                | 2.9             | 2.6              | 2.4           |
| Accumulation at ELA                                      | 1570               | 1570            | 1500             | 1440          |
| Ablation gradient (mm m <sup>-1</sup> )                  | 4.9                | 4.9             | 4.8              | 4.6           |
| Ablation (m <sup>3</sup> H <sub>2</sub> O)               | 3865               | 4973            | 2651             | 52823         |
| Mass flux (m <sup>3</sup> ice)                           | 4210               | 5417            | 2888             | 57541         |
| Cross-section at ELA (m <sup>2</sup> )                   | 3673               | 2144            | 2458             | 12855         |
| Average total velocity at ELA (m a <sup>-1</sup> )       | 1.15               | 2.5             | 1.17             | 4.5           |
| Basal sheer stress at ELA (bars)                         | 0.6                | 0.50            | 0.58             | 0.64          |
| Average deformation velocity at ELA (m a <sup>-1</sup> ) | 1.18               | 1.67            | 1.1              | 1.78          |
| Basal slip as % of total velocity                        | 0                  | 33              | 0                | 61            |
| Size of glacier (km <sup>2</sup> )                       | 0.052              | 0.042           | 0.039            | 0.39          |
| Maximum glacier thickness (m)                            | 31                 | 22              | 22               | 35            |

The process by which snow is transformed to ice, and the time taken for the transformation to occur, differs in warm temperate environments and in dry cold ones (Bennett and Glasser, 1996; Benn and Evans, 1998; Jania, 2004). Snow to ice transformation occurs at a depth of approximately 13 m below the surface, or within 3 to 5 years of burial, as a result of high accumulation and melt rates in a low altitude temperate area (Paterson, 1994; Bennett and Glasser, 1996; Benn and Evans, 1998). In warmer temperate environments where surface melting and percolation prevail, the transformation of snow to ice occurs rapidly (Lock, 1990; Menzies, 2002b; Jania, 2004). It is proposed that snow to ice transformation in the Drakensberg would have the potential to be rapid, given the large diurnal range in temperatures, which would accelerate melting and refreezing. It is therefore suggested that the minimum thickness of 30 m for glaciers may be an underestimation for the Drakensberg region, as is evidenced by ice formation occurring at 13 m at a temperate glacier (Paterson, 1994; Bennett and Glasser, 1996; Benn and Evans, 1998).

#### **10.4 SNOWBLOW AND AVALANCHING**

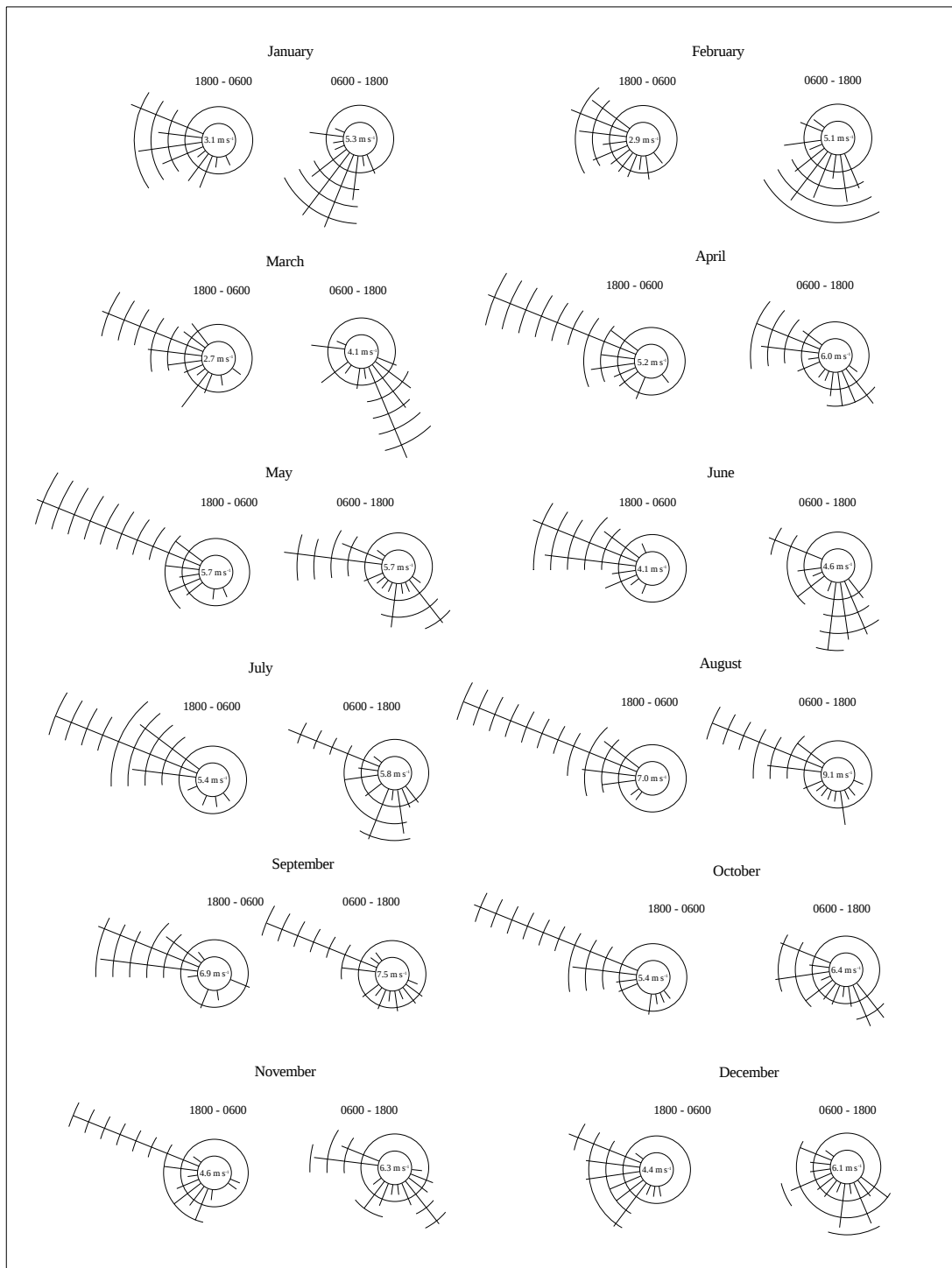
It is clear from Table 10.5 that the precipitation required for glaciers to be sustained exceeds the amount suggested in the region during the LGM (820 mm/annum). It is therefore necessary to investigate the effect that snowblow and avalanching may have had in providing the additional precipitation required.

It has been reported that avalanching is a major contributing factor for extra accumulation of snow onto a glacier, and in particular on influencing the mass balance of cirque glaciers (Dahl *et al.*, 1997). Zalikhanov (1975) reports that avalanches contribute between 10% and 65% of the accumulation on glaciers in the USSR, whilst Grosval'd and Kotlyakov (1969) and Tushinsky (1975) suggest that some glaciers are entirely dependant on avalanched snow. In addition, Inoue (1977) attributes 75% of the accumulation of a glacier in Nepal to avalanching. It has further been suggested that wind-blow and avalanching in the Caucasus is considerable, and that glaciers oriented transverse to prevailing winds received particularly significant accumulations from this source (Kotlyakov and Krenke, 1979).

Potential snow avalanching areas have been defined as those that slope at more than 20°, directly on the accumulation area of a former glacier, whilst potential snow-blow

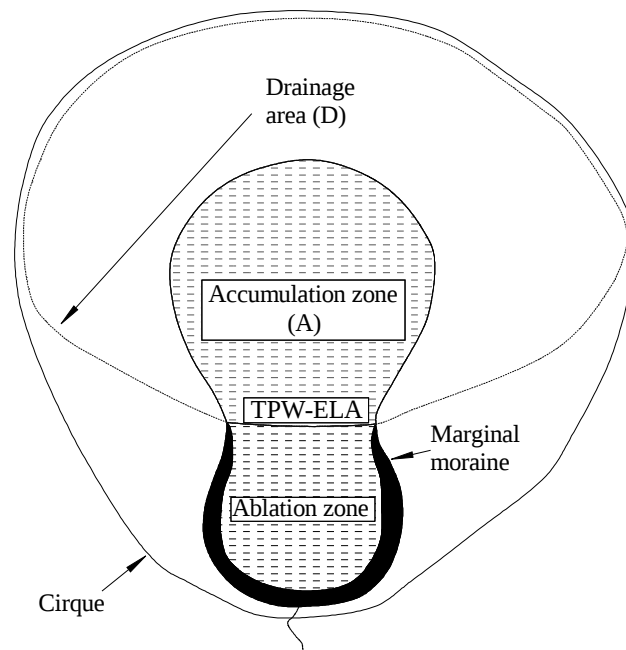
areas have been defined as those slopes, within the catchment, that slope directly onto the accumulation area or a potential avalanching area (Sissons and Sutherland, 1976). It was also established that between 10% and 20% of accumulation on glaciers in the SE Grampians was from snow avalanching and snowblow (Sissons and Sutherland, 1976). Where there is a prevalent wind direction, snowblow may be critical in areas of marginal glaciation (Mitchell, 1996), and it has been shown that snowblow can be significant in determining glacier distribution and the ELA (Sissons, 1979, 1980a, 1980b; Sutherland, 1984; Leonard, 1989; Ballantyne, 1989b; Shakesby and Matthews, 1993; Ballantyne and Benn, 1994b). The small size of the glaciers in the Drakensberg ( $0.039 \text{ km}^2$  to  $0.39 \text{ km}^2$ ) (Table 10.5) and the 88 m difference in ELA may indicate that the glaciers owe their existence to local factors.

In the Drakensberg, predominant winds are from the north and west in the winter (Tyson *et al.*, 1976; Freiman *et al.*, 1998; Sene *et al.*, 1998) and have been described in section 3.4.4. This is largely attributed to the high pressure system which prevails throughout the year over the interior of southern Africa (Tyson *et al.*, 1996). Work undertaken by Freiman *et al.* (1998) also describes dominant east-southeasterly winds which are attributed to a combination of regional plain-mountain winds blowing from the cooler plains towards the warmer escarpment, and local valley winds advancing upslope by anabatic flow during the day and in the early evening (Tyson *et al.*, 1976). Diurnal wind variation at Sani Pass recorded by Preston-Whyte (1971) indicates a predominantly north-westerly wind during the night and a predominantly southeasterly wind during the day. Wind data obtained at Sani Top (provided by Prof. Stefan Grab for the year 2001) are presented in Figure 10.10. Monthly 12 hourly wind roses are used to determine wind direction and speed during the night time (1800 to 0600) and daytime (0600 to 1800). Night time winds throughout the year are predominantly westerly to north-westerly; whilst during the daytime they tend to be more southerly. This is similar to wind data from Sani Pass described by Preston-Whyte (1971), who also observed north-westerly winds between 2100 and 0900, whereas southeasterly winds were more predominant after 0900. During the winter months (May to August), there is a stronger westerly to north-westerly direction than during the summer months. Mean wind velocity indicates that August is the windiest month, with an average of  $9.1 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ . The wind is also slightly stronger during the daytime than at night time.



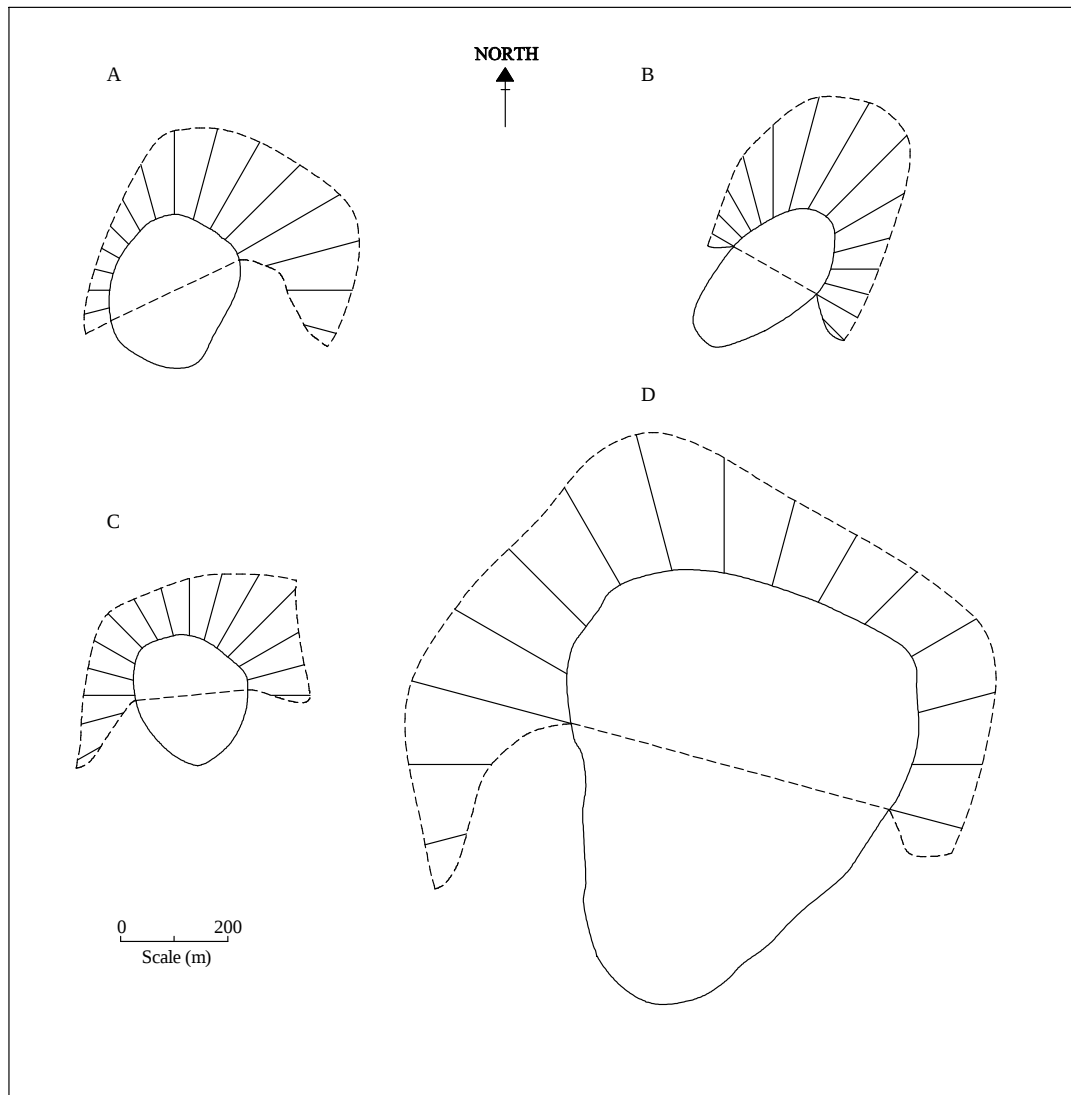
**Figure 10.10** Surface wind roses for Sani Top. The arcs represent the 5% frequency intervals, as determined by dominant wind directions. Mean wind velocity is shown in the inner circle.

Calculation of the potential snowblow area for each palaeoglacier has followed the outline described in Sissons and Sutherland (1976), which considers all ground lying above the accumulation area of the glacier and sloping towards the glacier surface, as having the potential to contribute snow to the glacier surface. This approach has been used in all palaeoclimatic reconstructions of Loch Lomond Stadial glaciers in Great Britain (Sissons, 1980b; Sutherland, 1984; Ballantyne, 1989b; Mitchell, 1996) and by Dahl *et al.* (1997) in southern Norway (Figure 10.11). The snowblow areas for the four sites were digitized in order to calculate overall area and the significance of different wind directions for 15° sectors (Figure 10.12), which were drawn as polar plots (Figure 10.13). This information is further summarised in Table 10.6, which considers each 90° quadrant (N, E, S and W).

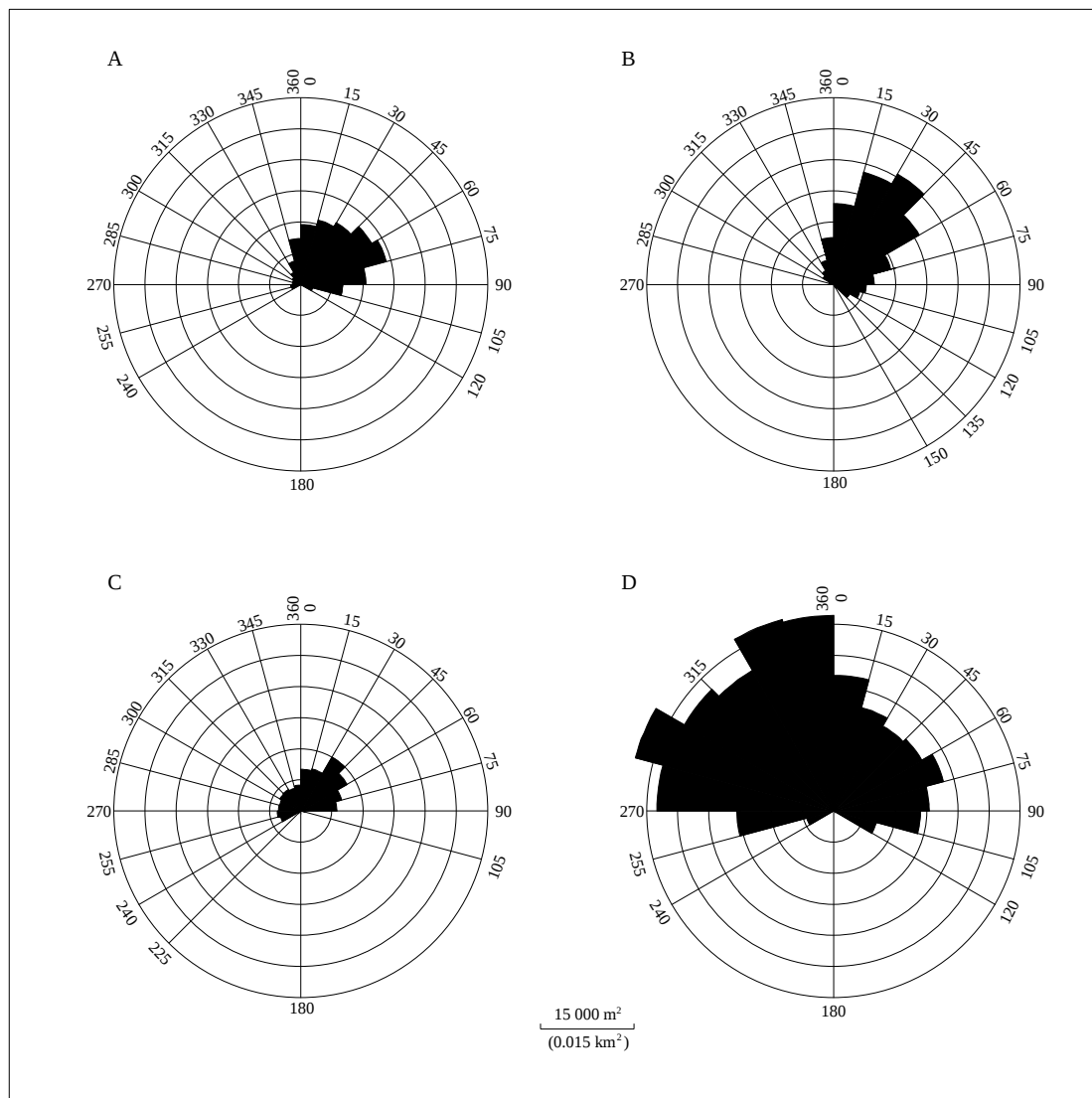


**Figure 10.11** Schematic drawing showing the Drainage area (D) above the temperature-precipitation-wind equilibrium-line altitude (TPW-ELA) and the corresponding Accumulation zone (A) of a cirque glacier (after Dahl *et al.*, 1997).

It is apparent that none of the sites (with the exception of Sekhokong Site 1) receive any snow-blown precipitation from the south. This is because the glacier sites are on south-facing slopes and therefore the southern sector is below the equilibrium line. The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 1 glaciers would receive the majority of windblown snow from the north and east sectors, whilst the Sekhokong Site 2 and



**Figure 10.12** Potential snowblow areas for each former glacier (A = Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, B = Sekhokong Site 1, C = Sekhokong Site 2, D = Leqooa Valley).



**Figure 10.13** Polar plots of snowblow area and orientation for each palaeoglacier (A = Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, B = Sekhokong Site 1, C = Sekhokong Site 2, D = Leqooa Valley).

Leqooa Valley glaciers would receive windblown snow from the north, east and west sectors. The Leqooa Valley palaeoglacier also has the potential for the highest quantity of snowblow.

Dahl *et al.* (1997) suggest that there is a ratio between the drainage area above the ELA (D) and the reconstructed glacier-accumulation area (A) in the measurement of the potential for additional accumulation of snow by wind in cirques (Figure 10.11). A low D/A would indicate a minor additional contribution of windblown snow, whilst a high D/A ratio shows the potential for large amounts of windblown snow (Dahl *et al.*, 1997). The D/A ratio for the four sites ranges from 1.5 at Leqooa Valley to 4.7 at Sekhokong Site 1 (Table 10.7). This ratio may then be used to indicate winter precipitation inclusive of windblown snow, which means precipitation during the LGM at the four sites would have ranged from 1230 mm/annum at Leqooa Valley to 3854 mm/annum at Sekhokong Site 1. The Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and the Sekhokong Site 1 palaeo-glaciers appear to owe their existence to north easterly winds, where between 92% and 96% of the potential snowblow area is constrained within the north and eastern sectors. However the palaeo-glacier at Sekhokong Site 2 and Leqooa Valley would have also been influenced by westerly winds, with potential snowblow areas within the north, east and western quadrants, suggesting a dominant wind direction from the west-northwest. Contemporary snow-bearing winds are from the southeast and southwest (Nicol, 1973; Grab, pers Comm., 2006). The snowblow reconstructions however indicate that the snow-bearing winds may have had a more northerly direction during the LGM.

As discussed previously, snow avalanching may be an important source of accumulation on glaciers (Grosval'd and Kotlyakov, 1969; Tushinsky, 1975; Zalikhanov, 1975; Dahl *et al.*, 1997). Avalanches are initiated by storms, particularly heavy snowfall, and may occur through direct action (only involving new snow) or climax action (instabilities which develop within the snowpack over several days) (Owens, 2004). Snow avalanches tend to occur on the lee side of slopes on angles ranging between 30° to 45° (Owens, 2004). However, Sissons and Sutherland (1976) suggest that potential snow avalanching areas may occur on slopes exceeding 20°. The potential for snow avalanching is greatest at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung site as a result

**Table 10.6** Values of potential snowblow for each 90° sector.

| Glacier            | Area<br>(km <sup>2</sup> ) | ELA<br>(m) | Total snowblow<br>area (km <sup>2</sup> ) | Snowblow area by 90° sectors expressed as percentage of total area |                   |                    |                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
|                    |                            |            |                                           | N<br>(316° - 45°)                                                  | E<br>(46° - 135°) | S<br>(136° - 225°) | W<br>(226° - 315°) |
| Tsatsa-La-Mangaung | 0.052                      | 3085       | 0.098                                     | 46                                                                 | 46                | 0                  | 8                  |
| Sekhokong Site 1   | 0.042                      | 3083       | 0.085                                     | 60                                                                 | 36                | 0.4                | 3.6                |
| Sekhokong Site 2   | 0.039                      | 3140       | 0.069                                     | 47                                                                 | 25                | 0                  | 28                 |
| Leqooa Valley      | 0.39                       | 3171       | 0.32                                      | 45                                                                 | 22                | 0                  | 33                 |

**Table 10.7** D/A ratios for the four sites.

|                                          | Tsatsa-La-Mangaung | Sekhokong Site 1 | Sekhokong Site 2 | Leqooa Valley |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|
| Drainage area (km <sup>2</sup> ) (D)     | 0.098              | 0.085            | 0.069            | 0.32          |
| Accumulation area (km <sup>2</sup> ) (A) | 0.026              | 0.018            | 0.019            | 0.21          |
| D/A ratio                                | 3.8:1              | 4.7:1            | 3.7:1            | 1.5:1         |
| Precipitation with snowblow              | 3116               | 3854             | 3034             | 1230          |

of the steep slope ( $>45^\circ$ ), which falls within the drainage area, and the presence of the fault line which would channel avalanched snow onto the glacier (Figure 5.1 and 5.2).

Additional evidence for snow avalanching at this site is observed in the typically supraglacially derived debris in terms of the poorly consolidated particles and massive structure (Figures 5.4 to 5.6), the coarse, unimodal particle size distributions (Figures 5.12 to 5.14 and Table 5.1) and the predominantly angular clasts (Figure 5.22 and Table 5.9), whilst the other sites contain significantly greater proportions of fines and more rounded clasts. It has been suggested that in high mountain environments, snow avalanching provides the single most important source of supraglacial debris (Benn and Evans, 1998), which is represented in the sedimentological characteristics of the deposit at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung.

The glaciological approach to the interpretation of linear deposits at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley sites provides strong supporting evidence for the occurrence of small glaciers during the LGM. According to Carr (2001), the analysis of reconstructed balance velocities of small glaciers and their likely components is the strongest indicator of a likely glacial/non-glacial origin, and all four palaeoglaciers are comparable with modern analogues.

Limited palaeo-precipitation has been a major concern with regards to glaciation in the Drakensberg (Hall, 2004); however necessary precipitation has been accounted for by including snowblow and avalanching. The exception to this is at the Leqooa Valley site, which has a relatively low snowblow ratio, indicating that windblown snow would have only made a minor contribution to the glacier. It has however, been suggested that the Leqooa Valley acts as a snow trap as a result of its topography, and that this area receives notable accumulations of snow compared to other areas of the Drakensberg (Mulder and Grab, 2002). In the eastern parts of southern Africa, the annual occurrence of cold fronts is approximately 43, and these predominantly occur towards late winter and early spring (Grab and Simpson, 2000). It has been suggested that during the Late Pleistocene, there was an increase in the frequency of cold fronts over the southern African coastal areas and adjacent interior (Van Zinderen Bakker, 1982). An increased frequency in cold fronts in winter and spring would have

produced heavier snowfalls and in turn increased the snow cover at high altitudes (Grab and Simpson, 2000).

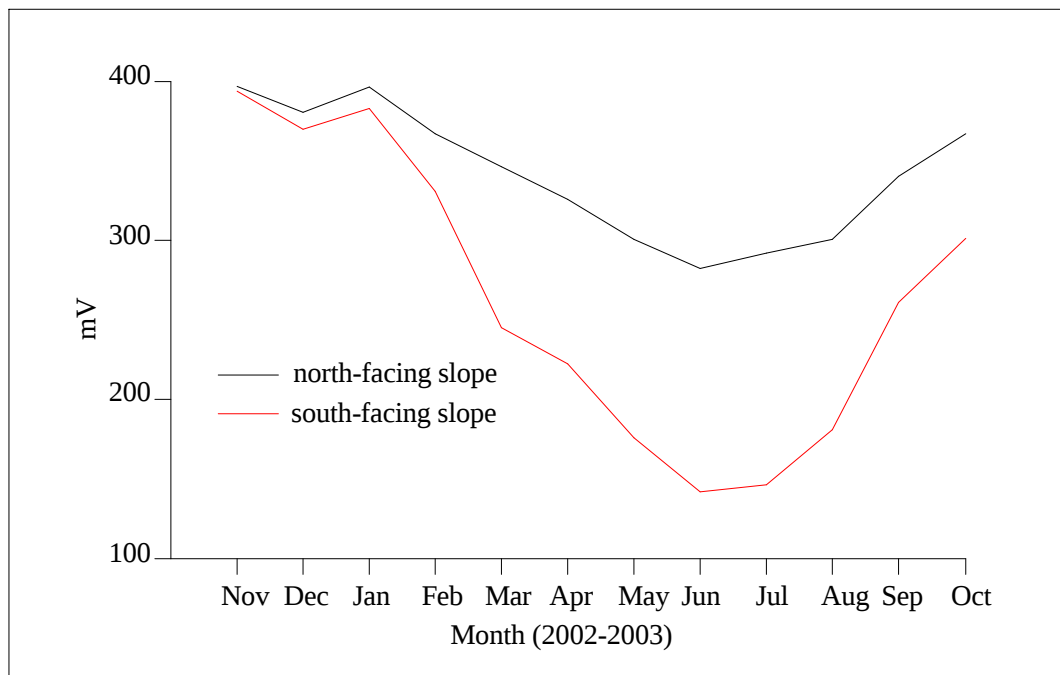
The fact that the Drakensberg falls within the summer rainfall region is still somewhat problematic, given that snowfalls do not contribute the majority of total precipitation. The glacier reconstruction modelling has shown that given a 6°C drop in temperature during the LGM, glaciers could have existed, however this is based on greater levels of precipitation than previously estimated. It has been suggested that a Southern Oscillation pattern could explain the climate at the LGM in southern Africa, whereby the Southern Indian high pressure cell is displaced north-eastwards, initiating drier conditions in summer and wetter conditions in winter in the summer rainfall region of South Africa (Tyson, 1986). It is however, unlikely that an inversion of the seasonal rainfall would have occurred (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000). It is suggested that precipitation (snowfall) was greatly increased during the LGM, more so than previously thought, and that the 30% drop in precipitation suggested by Partridge *et al.* (1999) and Tyson and Partridge (2000) may have been a major over-estimation for the Drakensberg region.

There are only two synoptic systems that can bring substantial moisture to the required altitudes in the high Drakensberg. These are cut-off lows and very deep ridging highs (Washington, pers comm., 2006). Cut-off lows are an intense form of westerly trough, which deepen into a closed circulation and extend downwards to the surface, becoming displaced equator-wards (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000; Dube, 2002). They are unstable systems that move westwards with increasing height (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000). These cut-off lows contribute a significant amount of early- and late-season rainfall in South Africa (Taljaard, 1985, 1986), where peak times are in March to May and September to November (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000). The combination of a cut-off low and a ridging anticyclone to the south produces widespread rainfall over South Africa (Dube, 2002). Ridging highs are associated with a westerly wave at 500 hPa and bring about rainfall along coastal margins (Vogel, 2000; Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000). The orographic effects of the Drakensberg result in high rainfall in these areas (Vogel, 2000). Light orographic rain can occur at any time on the north-east and south-east slopes of the Drakensberg Mountains as a result of warm maritime air approaching from the Indian Ocean (Van Zinderen Bakker and Werger, 1974; Sene *et al.*, 1998). Rainfall for the Drakensberg

region may be severely underestimated given the lack of rainfall measuring stations on these slopes. Ridging highs account for 16% to 25% of the rainfall variance over South Africa and produce extensive cloud cover along the southern and eastern coast and inland areas, which may rise above the Drakensberg Mountains and bring rainfall from October to May (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000). An increase in these weather systems may have brought about sufficient winter precipitation in order to sustain the survival of the palaeoglaciers.

### 10.5 SOLAR RADIATION

Although the glacier reconstructions have proved successful, it must still be established why moraine-like features only occur at select sites and not on adjacent slopes which reach even higher altitudes. In order to explain the occurrence of these features on south-facing slopes, as opposed to north-facing slopes, solar radiation was recorded from November 2002 to October 2003 at Nhlangeni, which is approximately 10 km north of Sani top, near the Sehonghong River (Figure 10.14 and Table 10.8).



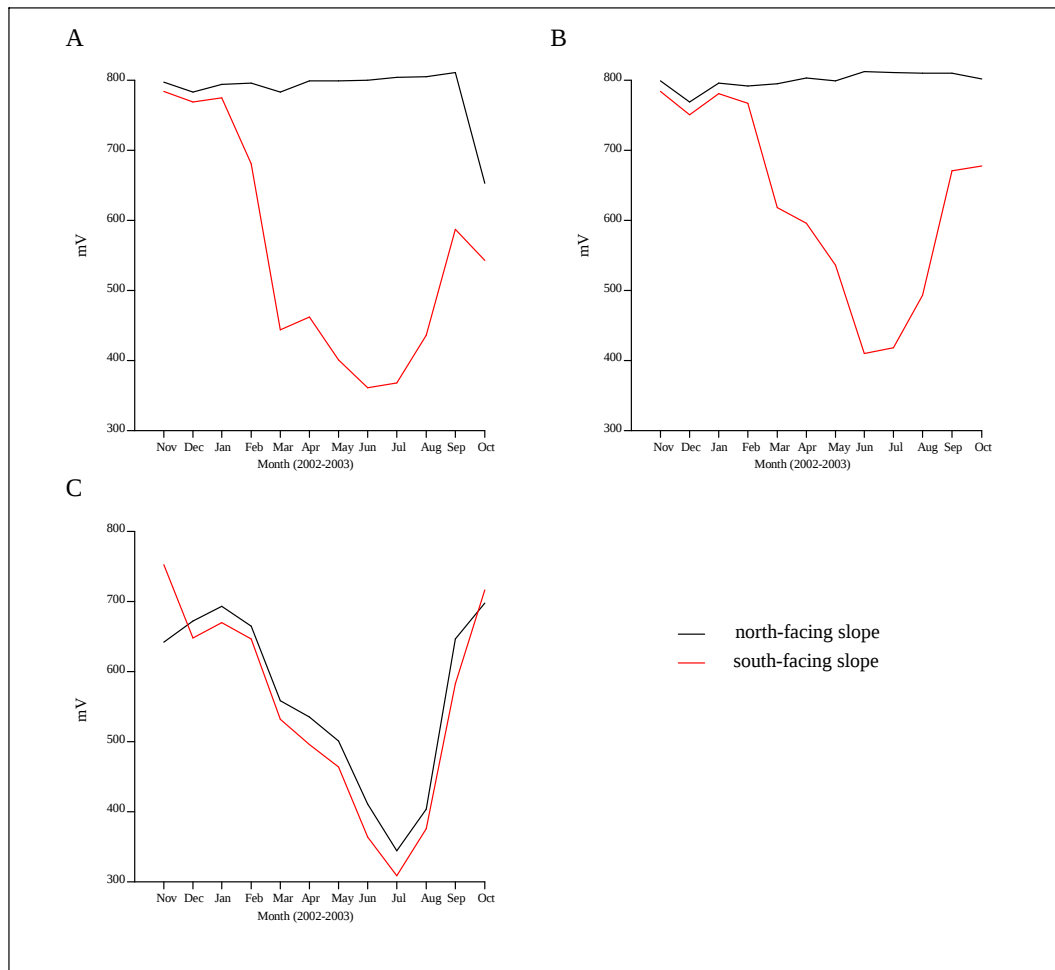
**Figure 10.14** Mean monthly solar radiation on a north- and south-facing slope at Nhlangeni.

Figure 10.14 and Table 10.8 indicate that during the summer months, the amount of solar radiation received on both the north- and south-facing slope is very similar. In contrast, from March onwards, solar radiation values on the south-facing slope fall in proportion to those on the north-facing slope, to the point that in June and July, the south-facing slope receives 50% less than its northern counterpart. The higher solar radiation values in the summer months occur as a result of the longer days, whereas the lower winter values result from the longer passage of solar radiation through the atmosphere due to low solar altitudes (Tyson *et al.*, 1976). These solar radiation results represent an mV output, however radiation values in  $\text{W m}^{-2}$  for Lesotho have been presented (Ba and Nicholson, 2001). Values for fall between  $225 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  and  $250 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  in January,  $175 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  and  $200 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  in April,  $125 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  and  $150 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  in July and  $200 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  in October.

**Table 10.8** Mean monthly solar radiation values for a north and south-facing slope at Nhlangeini.

| Month                             | North-facing slope (mV) | South-facing slope (mV) |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| November (from 20 <sup>th</sup> ) | 397                     | 394                     |
| December                          | 381                     | 370                     |
| January                           | 396                     | 383                     |
| February                          | 367                     | 331                     |
| March                             | 346                     | 245                     |
| April                             | 326                     | 222                     |
| May                               | 302                     | 177                     |
| June                              | 283                     | 142                     |
| July                              | 293                     | 146                     |
| August                            | 302                     | 181                     |
| September                         | 341                     | 261                     |
| October (until 6 <sup>th</sup> )  | 367                     | 301                     |

Additional solar radiation results are presented in Figure 10.18 and Tables 10.9 and 10.10 for various times of the day during the year. On the north-facing slope, solar radiation values are more or less constant between 9 am and noon, but fall rapidly by 3pm. This is more noticeable during the winter months where there is over a 50% drop by 3pm in July and August (Table 10.10). The results for the south-facing slope confirm results presented in Table 10.8, namely that these slopes receive >50% less insolation than their northern counterparts during winter, even at noon (Table 10.10). Although the solar radiation received on the north-facing slope is fairly constant by 9 am, it is slightly lower on the south-facing slope, reaching its maximum at noon. By



**Figure 10.15** Solar radiation for the north and south-facing slope at Nhlangeni for various times of day (A = 9am, B = Noon, C = 3pm).

3pm both north and south-facing slopes receive considerably less solar radiation and they display almost identical trends.

The difference of 50% in summer and winter radiation values has also been expressed by Gopinathan (1991). Solar radiation was derived for Lesotho as a whole, based on data for one measuring station, whilst other values were estimated based on other parameters (Gopinathan, 1988a, 1988b and 1988c). Similar results to those obtained at Nhlangeni have been reported on a 10° north- and south-facing slope in the Drakensberg (Tyson *et al.*, 1976). They report that during the summer, the north-facing slope receives only slightly more radiation than the south-facing slope, whereas

**Table 10.9** Solar radiation values for a north-facing slope at Nhlangeni at various times of the day.

| Month                             | North-facing slope<br>(mV) at 9 am | North-facing slope<br>(mV) at noon | North-facing slope<br>(mV) at 3 pm |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| November (from 20 <sup>th</sup> ) | 797                                | 799                                | 642                                |
| December                          | 783                                | 769                                | 672                                |
| January                           | 794                                | 796                                | 693                                |
| February                          | 796                                | 792                                | 665                                |
| March                             | 783                                | 795                                | 559                                |
| April                             | 799                                | 803                                | 535                                |
| May                               | 799                                | 799                                | 501                                |
| June                              | 800                                | 812                                | 411                                |
| July                              | 804                                | 811                                | 344                                |
| August                            | 805                                | 810                                | 404                                |
| September                         | 811                                | 810                                | 647                                |
| October (until 6 <sup>th</sup> )  | 653                                | 802                                | 698                                |

**Table 10.10** Solar radiation values for south-facing slope at Nhlangeni at various times of the day.

| Month                             | South-facing slope<br>(mV) at 9 am | South-facing slope<br>(mV) at noon | South-facing slope<br>(mV) at 3 pm |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| November (from 20 <sup>th</sup> ) | 784                                | 784                                | 753                                |
| December                          | 769                                | 751                                | 648                                |
| January                           | 775                                | 781                                | 670                                |
| February                          | 681                                | 767                                | 647                                |
| March                             | 444                                | 618                                | 532                                |
| April                             | 462                                | 596                                | 496                                |
| May                               | 401                                | 536                                | 464                                |
| June                              | 361                                | 410                                | 364                                |
| July                              | 368                                | 418                                | 309                                |
| August                            | 436                                | 493                                | 376                                |
| September                         | 587                                | 671                                | 583                                |
| October (until 6 <sup>th</sup> )  | 543                                | 678                                | 717                                |

in winter, the south-facing slope receives about 50% less radiation, as observed at Nhlangeni (Figure 10.14 and Table 10.5). On slopes with a 30° angle, Tyson *et al.* (1976) report that a south-facing slope receives six times less radiation than its northern counterpart at midday and that as a result of the frequency of steep slopes in the Drakensberg, a complex spatial pattern of solar radiation may be expected, especially in winter when the sun is at low angles. This is further reinforced by Granger and Schulze (1977), who suggest that in winter, when solar altitudes are low, large variations in incoming solar radiation occur as a result of aspect and slope. In contrast, aspect is less important in the summer as a result of the high solar altitudes

and prevailing cloudy conditions, and therefore slope steepness is the major factor determining the amount of radiation received (Granger and Schulze, 1977). Furthermore, during the equinoxes, the influence of slope is more marked on the steeper southern aspects (Granger and Schulze, 1997).

The variation in annual solar radiation values are primarily due to changes in atmospheric conditions, such as cloudiness, water vapour and aerosol content (Ba and Nicholson 2001; Šúri and Hofierka, 2004). In Lesotho, the winter months are mostly cloudless, whilst the summer months are much cloudier, which is when most of the rainfall occurs (Tyson *et al.*, 1976; Gopinathan, 1991). This is because of the lower pressures, the shift in the ITCZ and the movement of moist air onto the continent from the east, which enables the development of thunderstorms (Vogel, 2000). The cloudy skies during summer reduce solar radiation levels in the eastern mountainous areas, whilst the western parts of Lesotho would usually receive higher radiation levels (Gopinathan, 1991). The palaeo-ablation season in Lesotho would have been from November to March, which is also the period when cloudy skies predominate (Gopinathan, 1991). This implies that solar radiation levels would be fairly low during this time as clouds strongly attenuate incoming radiation (Ba and Nicholson, 2001), hence less energy would be available for ablation (Benn and Evans, 1998). The influence of mountains upon shading of the sun at low altitude is typical of many locations within the Drakensberg (Tyson *et al.*, 1976). The summer months receive less sunshine than the winter months, as well as a rapid decline in the probability of sunshine after midday as a result of the frequent occurrence of afternoon cloud associated with orographic thunderstorms at this time of the year (Tyson *et al.*, 1976). The influence of afternoon clouds may account for the drop in solar radiation values in the summer months after noon. The drop in solar radiation received during the winter months after noon is likely to be as a result of shading from local topography.

Direct solar radiation is a function of latitude and time, and topography is the major factor modifying the local distribution of insolation, through variability in elevation, surface orientation and shadows cast by topographic features (Heggem *et al.*, 2001; Matzinger *et al.*, 2003; Chueca and Julián, 2004; Šúri and Hofierka, 2004). Orientation of the ground surface with respect to incoming solar radiation is particularly important in terms of favouring ablation on the local scale, and even more

in areas of marginal glaciation (Chueca and Julián, 2004). Small glaciers tend to be in delicate balance situations and are particularly impacted by aspect in their morphology and development (Chueca and Julián, 2004). Differences in the amount of solar radiation have been very important in the preservation or disappearance of small glacier remnants in the Pyrenees (Chueca and Julián, 2004), Kilimanjaro (Rosqvist, 1990), Mount Kenya (Young and Hastenrath, 1987), New Guinea and the South American Andes (Kaser, 1999). At Kilimanjaro, the radiation geometry causes a more extensive ice cover on the southern slopes, whilst the north side of Kibo receives greater insolation (Rosqvist, 1990; Young and Hastenrath, 1987). Glaciers reach low elevations on the western slopes, whilst the eastern slopes remain ice-free (Young and Hastenrath, 1987). They attribute this to the cloudiness in the afternoon and reduced insolation on the westward-facing slopes (Figure 10.16).



**Figure 10.16** An example of afternoon cloud cover, covering Kibo (Kilimanjaro) on a south-western facing slope at 3950 m a.s.l. (photo by S. Mills).

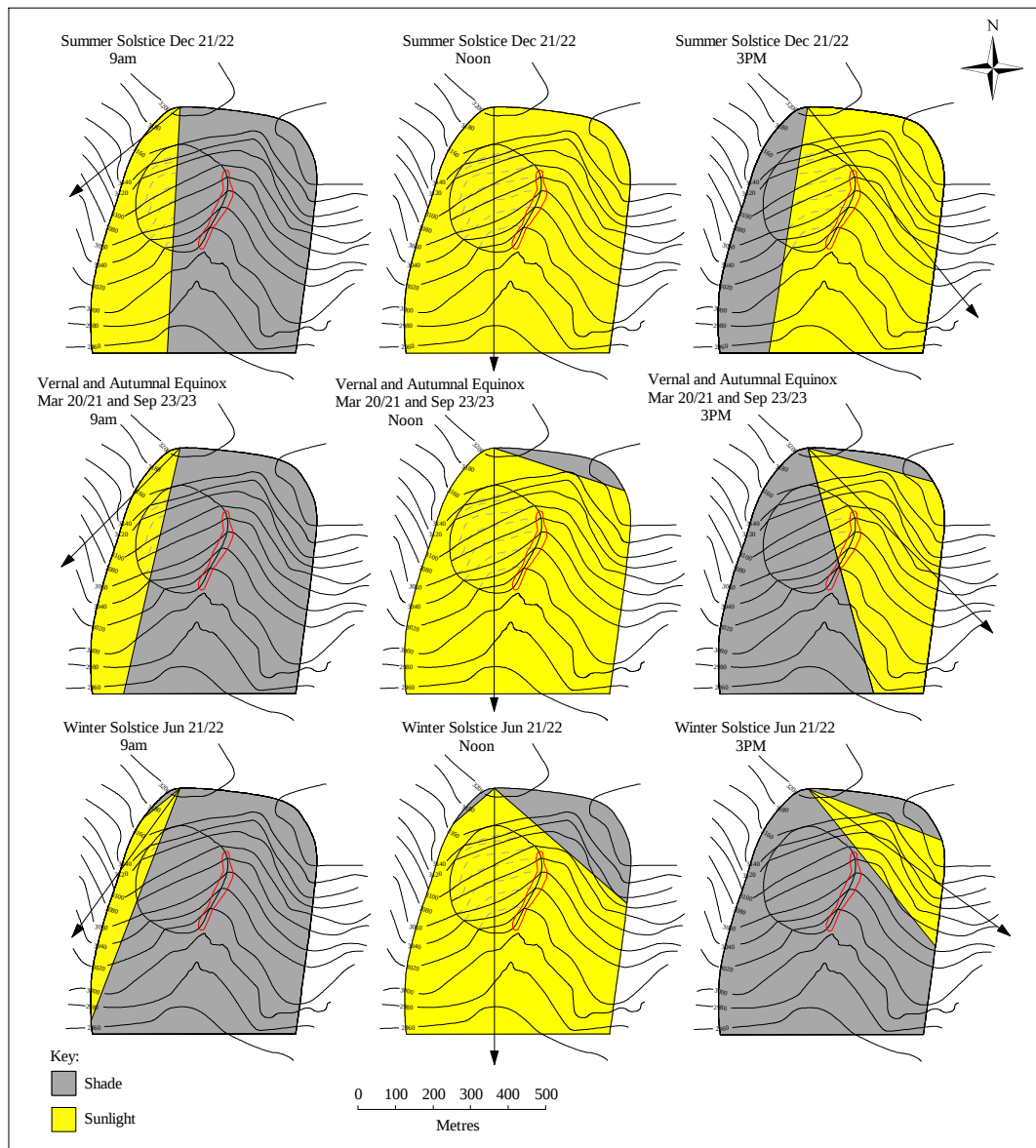
Glaciers on Mount Kenya are also predominantly found on the western and southern slopes, as these are the most favourable areas for accumulation and survival of snow as a result of diurnal circulation and radiation geometry (Hastenrath, 1984; Young and Hastenrath, 1987). The highest summits of Mount Kenya are clear until late morning,

and then become progressively obscured by clouds that only dissipate in the late afternoon, which results in reduced insolation (Young and Hastenrath, 1987). This protects the glaciers and snow from the effects of ablation which are more pronounced on slopes which receive direct solar radiation (Young and Hastenrath, 1987). Work reporting on the importance of shade suggests that the geometry and mass balance of cirque glaciers are most likely to be influenced by local factors such as snow drifting and shading (Benn *et al.*, 2005). The influence of shade as well as the presence of afternoon cloud during the summer months may also have been the primary factors determining the presence of glaciers in certain parts of eastern Lesotho.

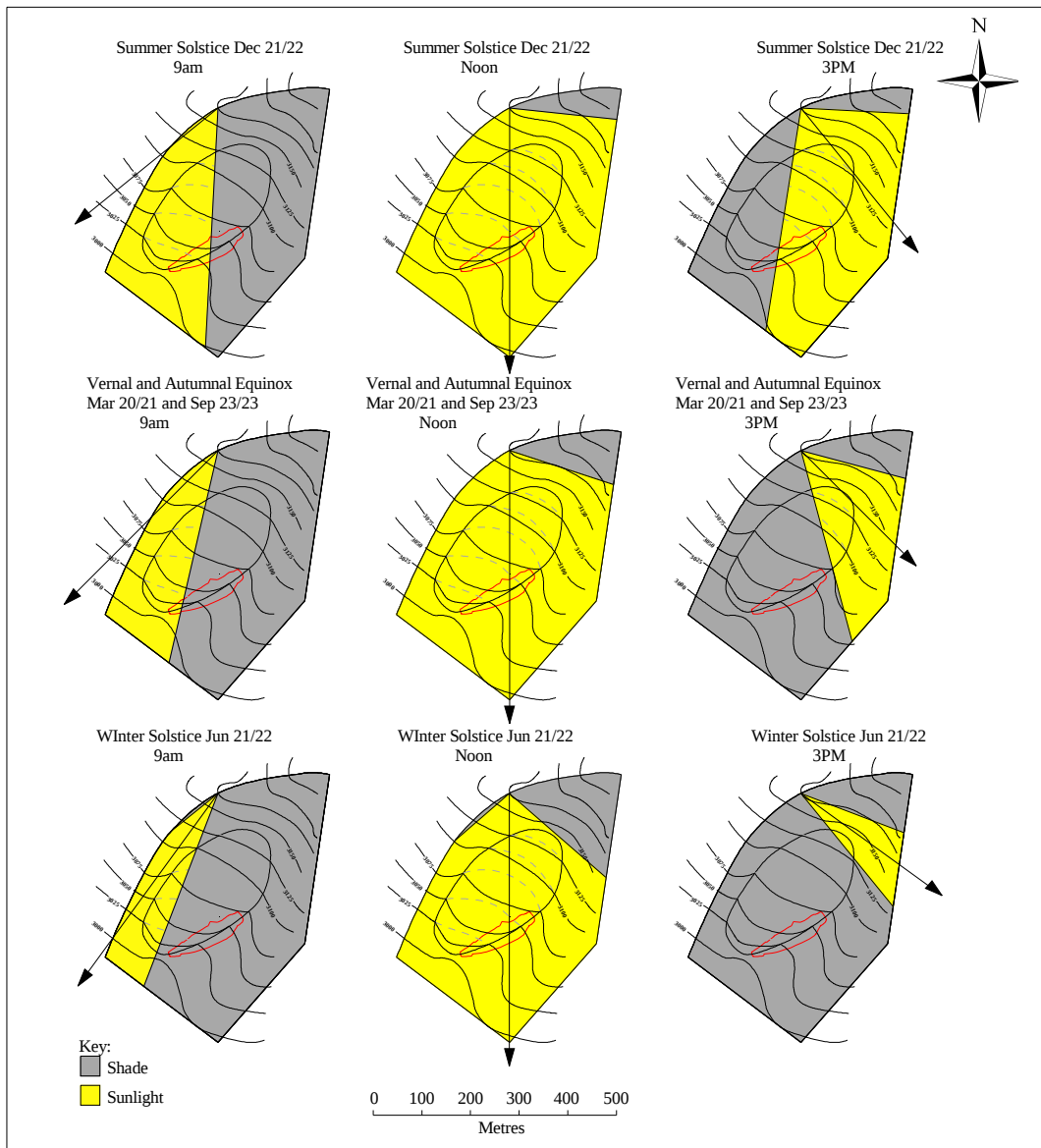
The variation in warm interglacial episodes and cold glacial episodes is driven by changes in the amount of solar radiation received from the sun (Bennett and Glasser, 1996). Periods with special climatic conditions have coincided with those of extreme solar activity, and those time periods with reduced solar activity have tended to be colder and synchronous with the expansion of the Earth's glaciers (Nesje and Dahl, 2000). It may therefore be expected that solar activity was reduced during the LGM, aiding the survival of the small palaeoglaciers in the Drakensberg.

Unfortunately, it was impossible to record solar radiation at the four sites. However, modelling hillshade can give an indication of the amount of insolation received at each site. Insolation may commence after sunrise, stop before sunset or cease temporarily if the slope is shaded for any given slope (Granger and Schulze, 1977). Hillshade based on shadows cast by topographic features was determined for the winter solstice, vernal and autumnal equinox and summer solstice, at various times of day (9am, noon and approximately 3pm) (Figures 10.17 to 10.20). Although these diagrams are only used to give an idea of hillshade, as lengths of shadows have not been calculated, they are nevertheless useful in explaining the likely occurrence of glaciers.

The most important time of year in terms of glacier survival is summer, as this is when ablation is likely to occur. Figures 10.17 and 10.18 indicate that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 1 palaeoglaciers would have had almost half their area in shade at 9 am and again by 3pm during the summer solstice, which suggests that

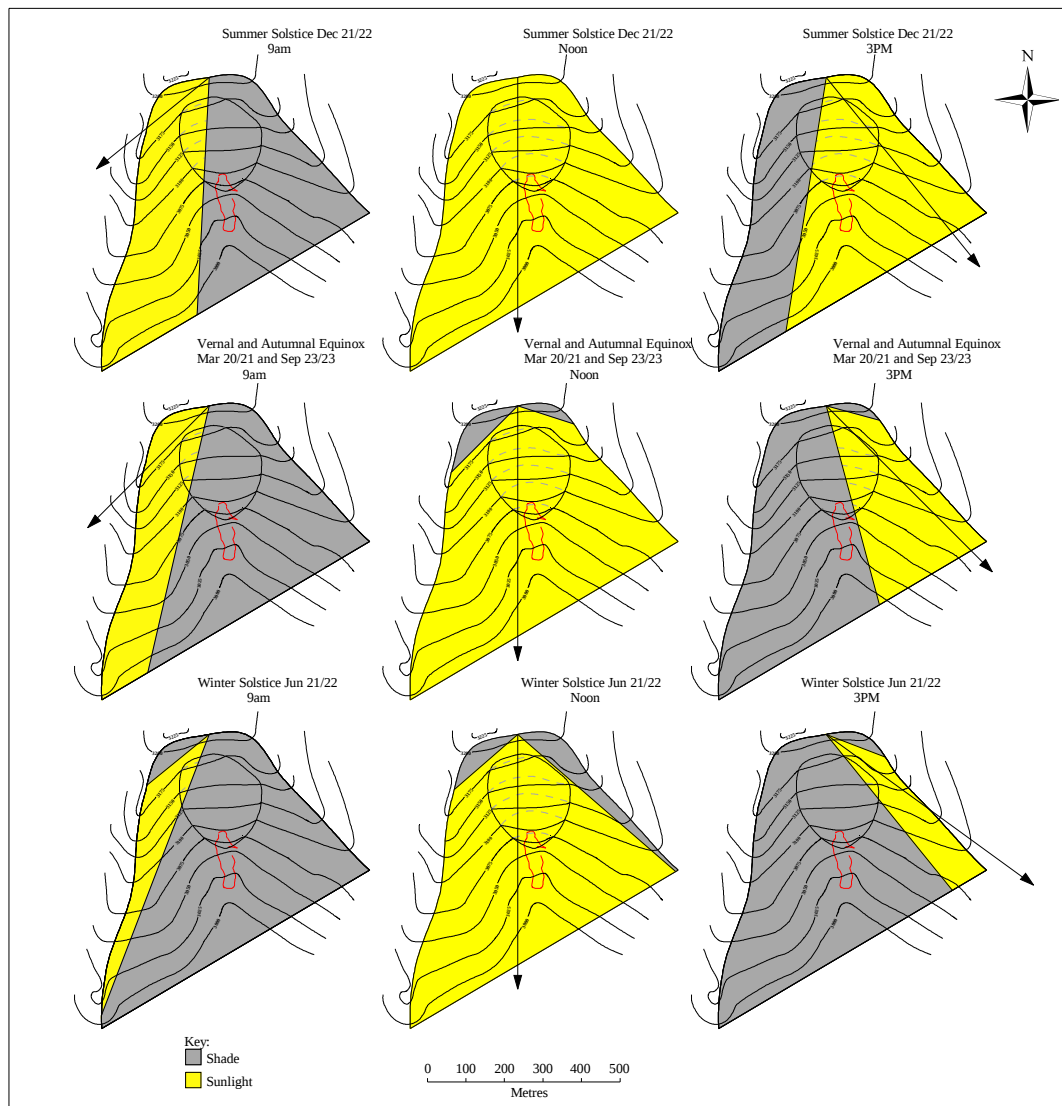


**Figure 10.17** Map indicating areas of shade at different times of the day and year at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung. Note: Arrow indicates orientation of the sun.

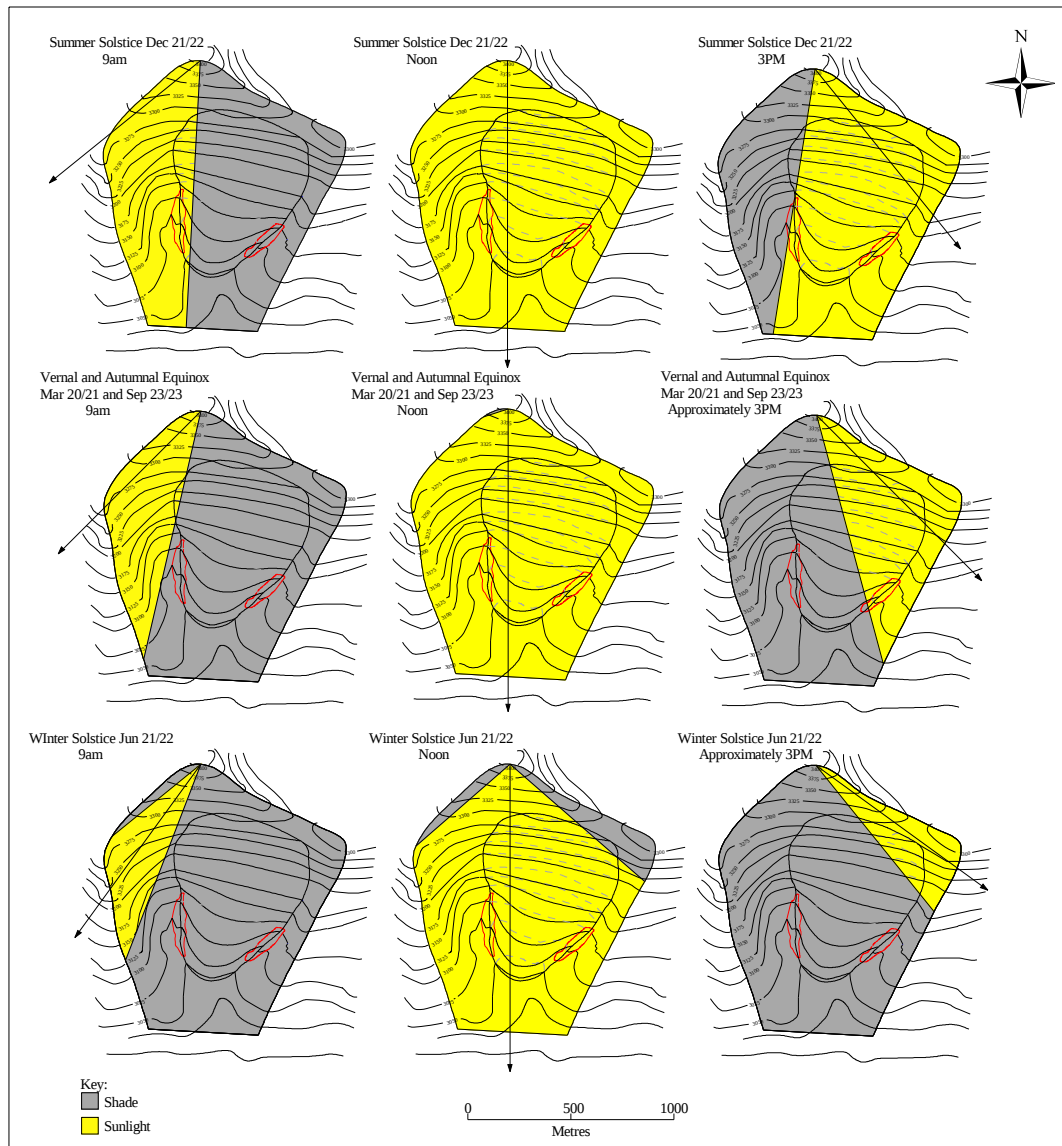


**Figure 10.18** Map indicating areas of shade at different times of the day and year at Sekhokong Site

1. Note: Arrow indicates orientation of the sun.



**Figure 10.19** Map indicating areas of shade at different times of the day and year at Sekhokong Site  
2. Note: Arrow indicates orientation of the sun.

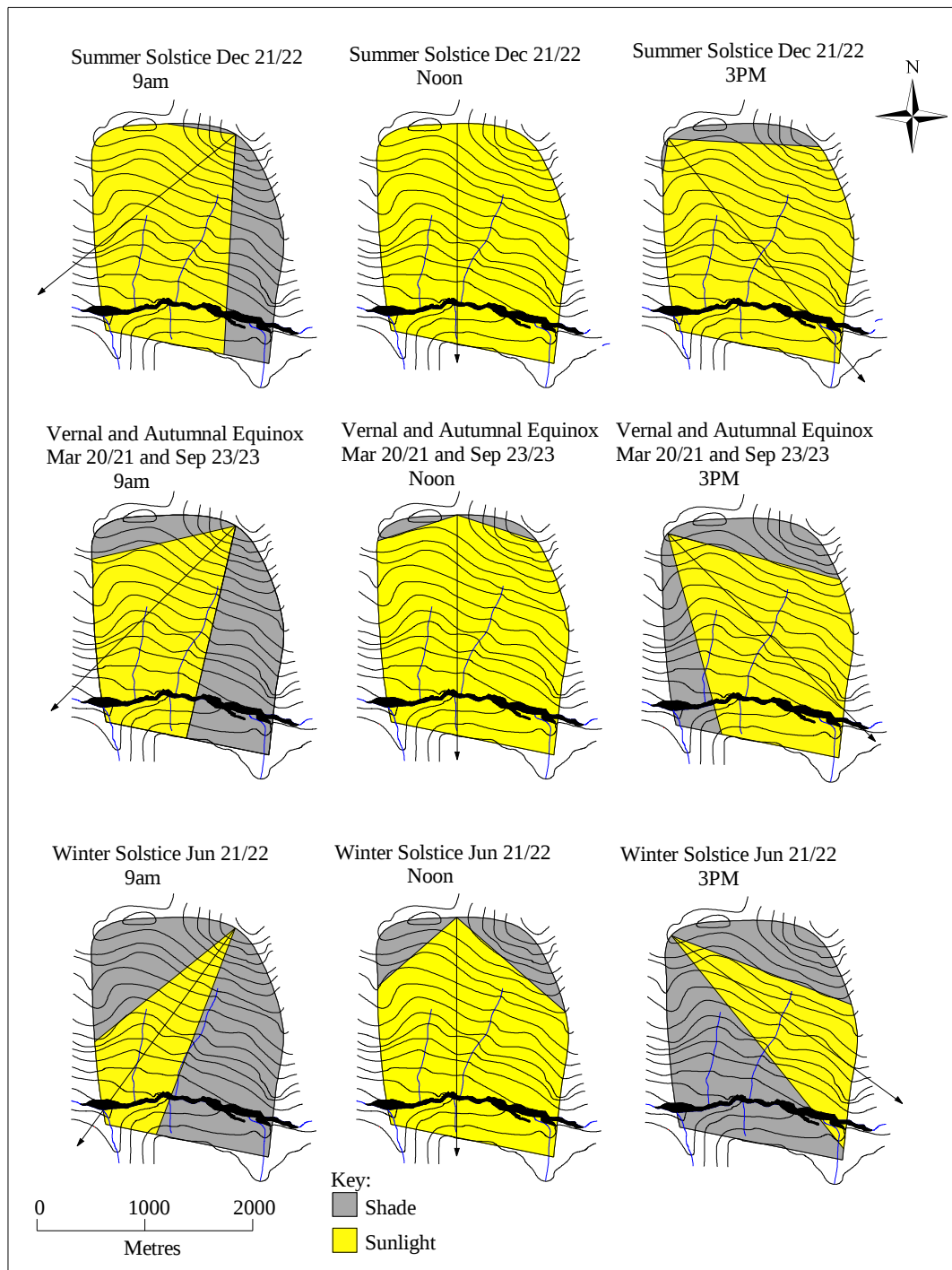


**Figure 10.20** Map indicating areas of shade at different times of the day and year at Leqooa Valley.

Note: Arrow indicates orientation of the sun.

they would only be completely in sunlight for less than 6 hours of the day. This would greatly reduce potential incoming solar radiation received, and hence inhibit ablation. In contrast, the Sekhokong Site 2 and Leqooa Valley palaeo-glaciers would still have been almost entirely shaded by 9am, whilst it would have taken slightly longer for them to be completely shaded in the afternoon. They are none the less shaded in part by 3pm, suggesting that they would become fully shaded fairly rapidly as the angle of the sun falls (Figures 10.19 and 10.20). Afternoon clouds during the summer months would also aid in the reduction of solar radiation, as discussed previously. As would be expected, shading increases after noon, and around the vernal and autumnal equinoxes the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung and Sekhokong Site 1 palaeoglaciers would have approximately three quarters of their surface area in shade by 3pm, whereas the Sekhokong Site 2 and Leqooa Valley palaeoglaciers would have more than half their surface area in shade by this time. During the winter solstice, when the sun is at its lowest angle, the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung palaeoglacier would have still been almost completely shaded at 9am, and completely shaded by 3pm. The Leqooa Valley palaeoglacier would also have been in shade by 9am, and almost completely shaded by 3pm. Although the Sekhokong Sites are not entirely shaded at 9am and 3pm, they would only have a very small surface area in the sun. The shading from the morning and afternoon sun at all these sites may have been one of the determining factors in ensuring the survival of these glaciers.

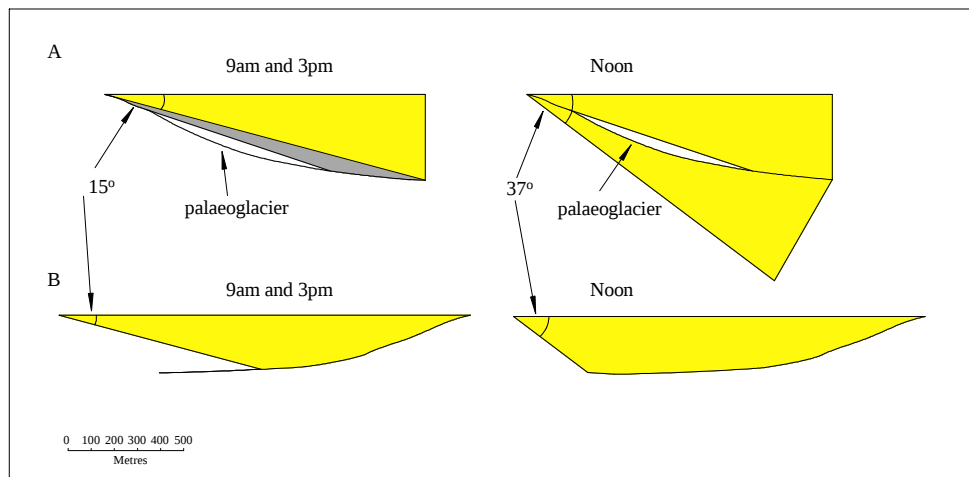
The positions of the palaeoglaciers within these enclosed slopes would also have affected shading, as open valleys and north-facing slopes would have allowed for more incoming solar radiation and hence would have restricted the formation of glaciers. This is evident from Figure 10.21, which represents shading at the Sehonghong Site. This area is much more open and it lacks the same topographic restrictions as the linear deposit slopes. For this reason, the effect of the sun in relation to the mountain crest is altered for different times of the day. It is clear that throughout the summer solstice, this area is in direct sunlight throughout the day and only at approximately 6.30 pm would shading really become a factor. It is only during the winter that shading would have a significant effect at this site. However, shade is much more important during the ablation season, which may explain the lack of glacial evidence in this area as the rate of snow ablation would have been accelerated at this site.



**Figure 10.21** Map indicating areas of shade at different times of the day and year at Sehonghong.

Note: Arrow indicates orientation of the sun.

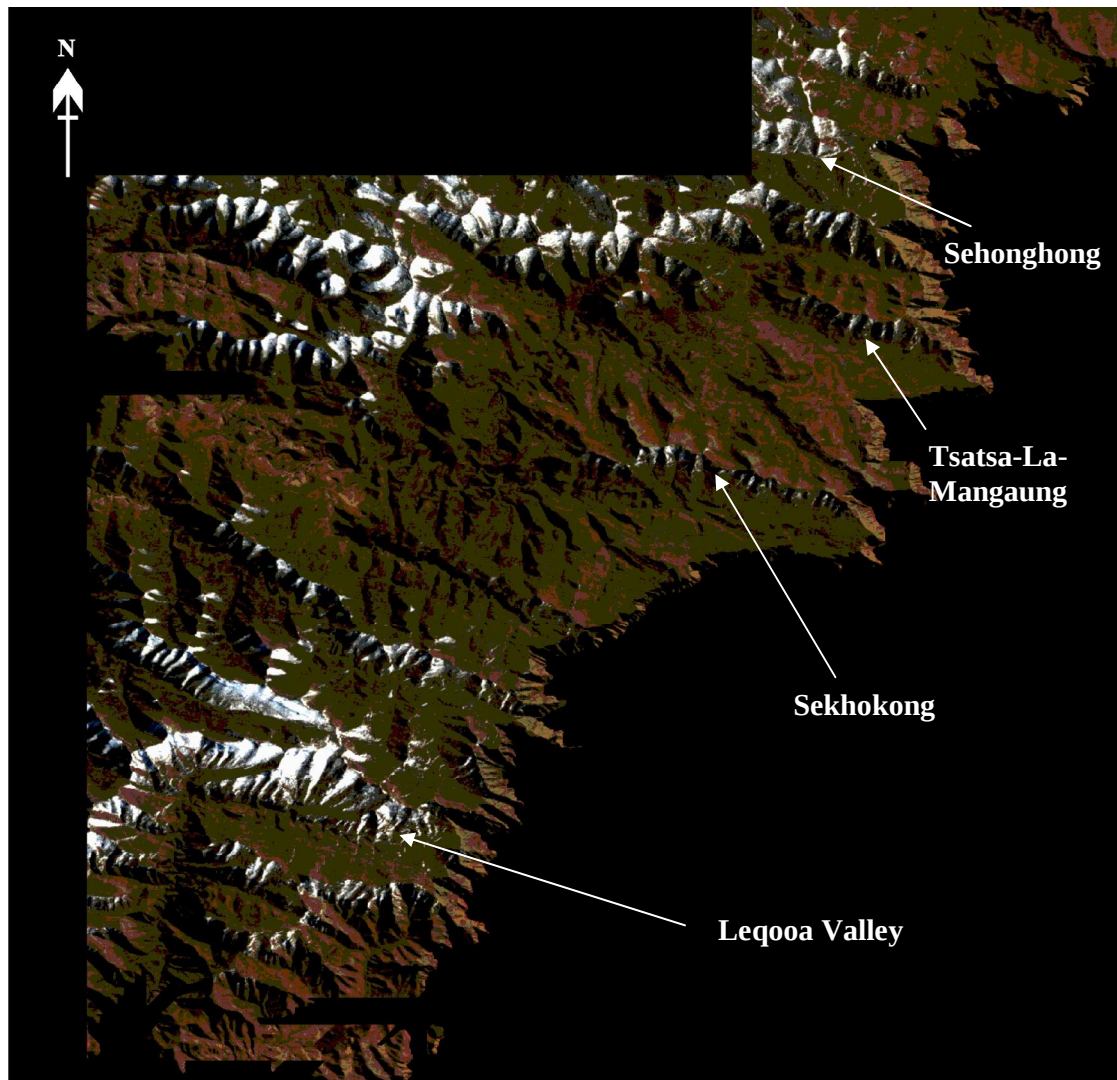
Although the same topographic controls from the east and west may be expected for north-facing slopes, meaning that they would experience some shade, the same cannot be said for the crestline above these slopes, as they are to the south and therefore would not create any shade. Diagrams are not shown for north-facing slopes, as these would be in direct sunlight throughout the majority of the day, given that sunlight would be reaching the slope directly. This is indicated in Figure 10.22, which compares the Leqooa Valley south-facing slope with its northern counterpart during the winter solstice. Both slopes are completely illuminated at noon, which would be expected, however even when the sun is at its lowest angle the north-facing slope is still completely in sunlight at 9 am and 3pm, whereas the south-facing slope along with the palaeoglacier are in the shade.



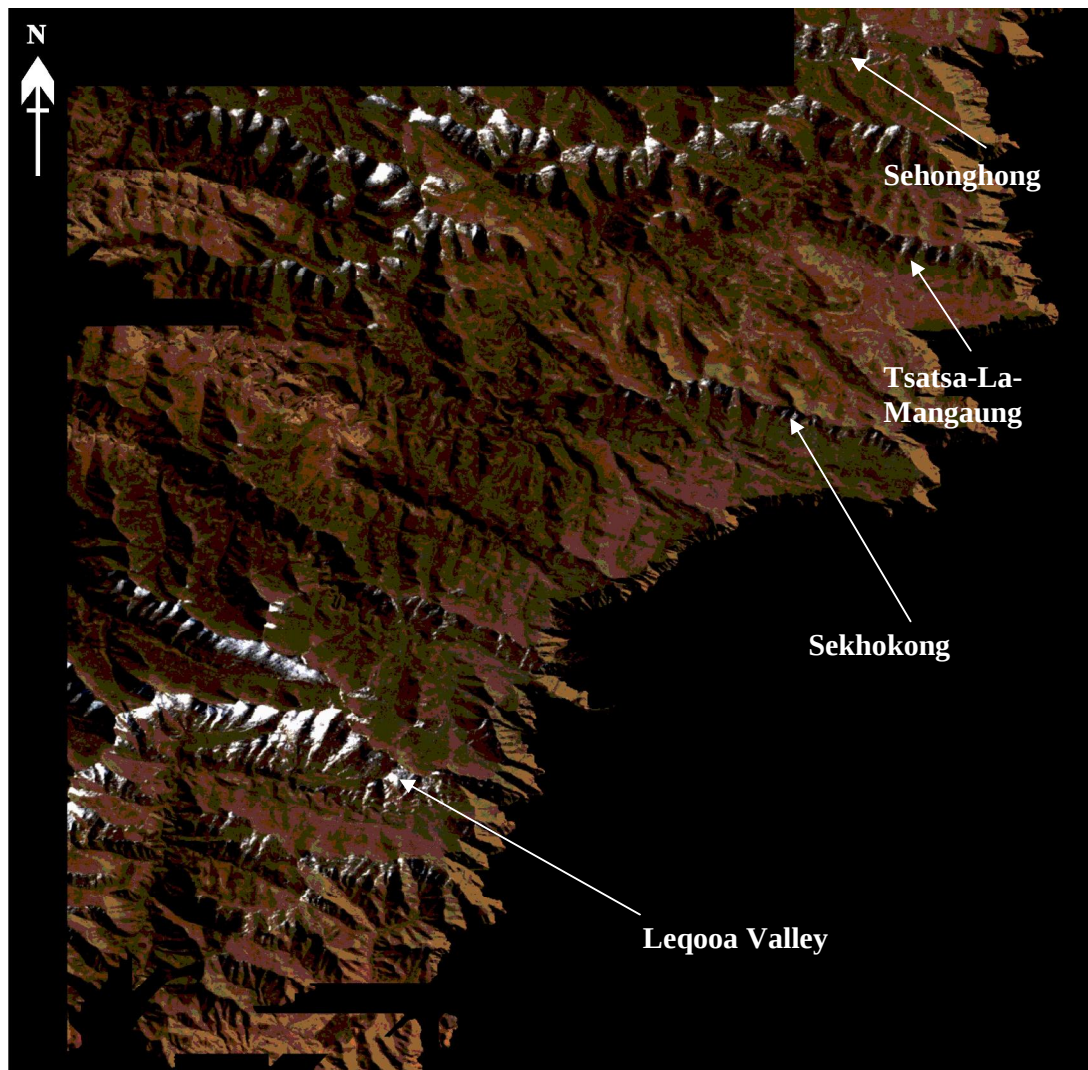
**Figure 10.22** A comparison of direct sunlight reaching slopes at Leqooa Valley during the winter solstice (A = south-facing slope, B = north-facing slope).

## 10.6 CONTEMPORARY SNOW PATCH DISTRIBUTION

In order to further determine why only a few isolated areas were subject to glaciation, contemporary snow patch distribution must be taken into account. An indication of contemporary snow patch distribution is displayed in Figure 10.23 and 10.24. Figure 10.23 indicates snow accumulation at all sites and in particular substantial snow accumulation at Leqooa Valley and Sehonghong. Figure 10.24 shows remaining snow cover approximately 2 weeks later. It is clear that snow remains at all linear deposit sites; however there is a substantial reduction in snow cover at Sehonghong,



**Figure 10.23** A real life colour composite image for the 3<sup>rd</sup> August 1990 (snow in white) (supplied by N. Mulder).



**Figure 10.24** A real life colour composite image for the 19<sup>th</sup> August 1990 (snow in white) (supplied by N. Mulder).

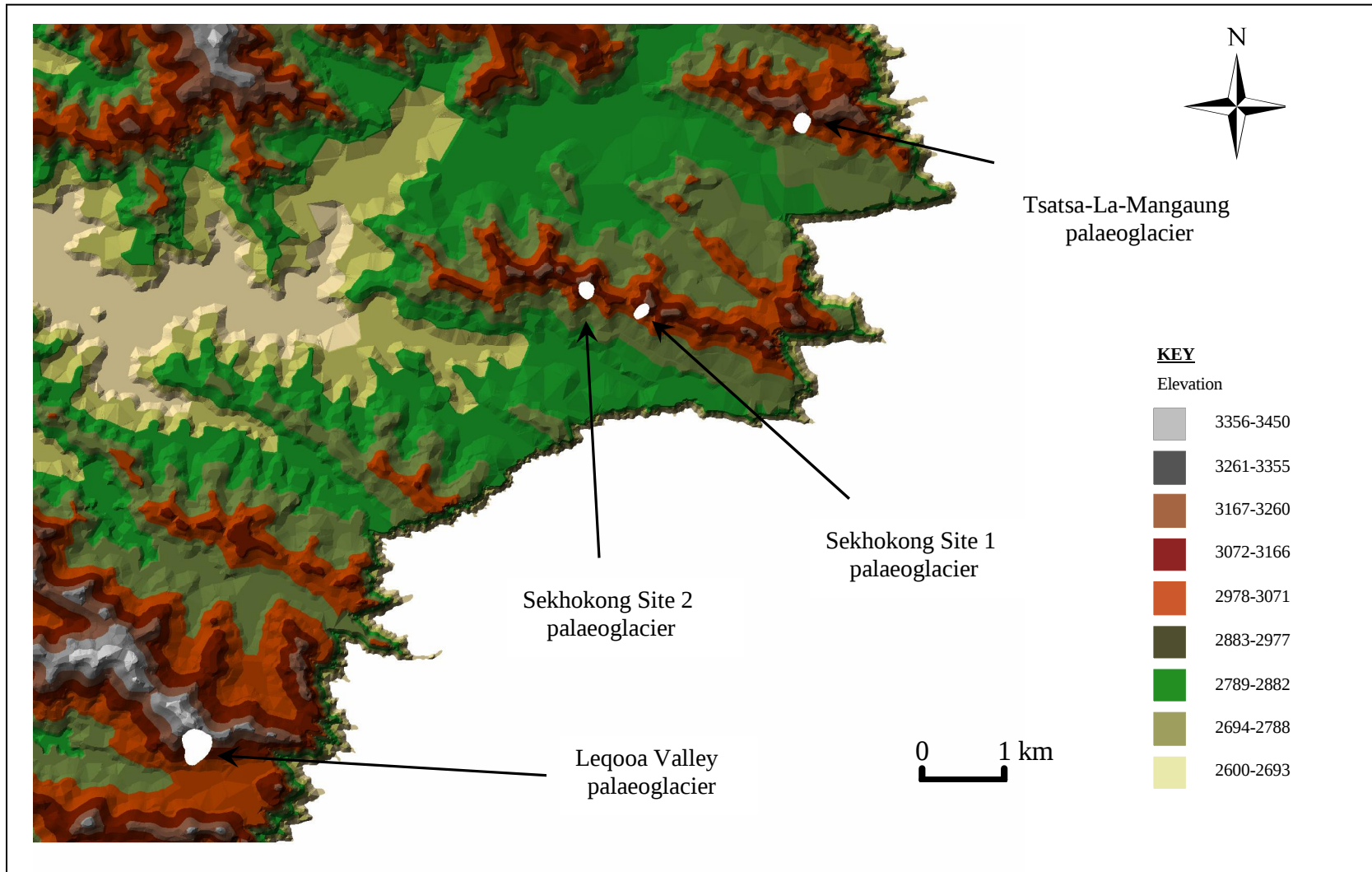
which may be attributed to the greater insolation that this site receives, thus accelerating melting.

According to Mulder and Grab (2002), altitude does not appear to play a significant role in the amount of snow received, given that similar altitudes occur towards the west of the escarpment, whilst there are significantly fewer accumulations of snow in these areas (Mulder and Grab, 2002). Accumulations of snow occur westwards, as indicated in Figures 10.23 and 10.24; however this has been attributed to the shape of the Leqooa Valley acting as a snow trap and airflow up the Leqooa Valley. It is suggested that distance from the escarpment and aspect are predominant factors, as the amount of snow received diminishes with distance from the escarpment, and snow patches predominantly persist on south-facing slopes (Mulder and Grab, 2002). It is suggested that the lack of snow on north-facing slopes is due to the severe ablation of snow as a result of higher levels of insolation and the lack of wind-blown snow (Mulder and Grab, 2002). Areas to the north of Sani Top lack linear deposits such as those found at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley, and it is suggested that this is because these areas receive less snow (Mulder and Grab, 2002). Although areas north of the study sites do not contain such linear slope deposits, it may be that areas to the west of the Leqooa study sites also contain similar deposits, associated with the late-lying snow patches.

## **10.7 SUMMARY**

The glacier reconstructions for the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley sites are comparable with modern analogues, suggesting that glaciers could have existed in these localities, given a 6°C temperature depression, as suggested by Heaton *et al.* (1986), Talma and Vogel (1992), Partridge *et al.* (1999), Tyson and Partridge (2000), Grab and Simpson (2000), Holmgren *et al.* (2003). Based on the analysis of the solar radiation results and contemporary snow patch distributions, it is clear that south-facing slopes receive considerably less solar radiation and more late-lying snow cover than their northern counterparts. It is suggested that topographic (e.g. altitude), microtopographic (e.g. slope gradient and aspect) and particularly microclimatic factors (e.g. late-lying snow cover, snowblow and solar radiation) play an important role in the distribution of the palaeoglaciers. It has been shown that areas below 3000 m a.s.l. are unlikely to have been conducive to glacier formation as a

result of a greater necessity for precipitation, whilst north-facing slopes do not favour the survival of late-lying snow patches owing to solar radiation being much more intense on these slopes. Adjacent areas to the study sites would be either too far from the escarpment to receive necessary snow, or lack the topographic shadows necessary to restrict incoming solar radiation, which hence increase snowmelt. It is therefore suggested that the High Drakensberg was within the glacial/periglacial equilibrium zone during the LGM; however the glacial zone was restricted to very few sites which comprised a delicate balance between necessary topographic and climatic factors to ensure the survival of small glaciers (Figure 10.25). It is possible that further slope deposits occur in the high Drakensberg, however it is suggested that these would occur principally on high-altitude south-facing slopes, where topographic features restrict insolation, and where there is the greatest amount of late-lying snow.



**Figure 10.25** DEM of the position of the palaeoglaciers in relation to each other.

# **CHAPTER 11**

## **Conclusion**

### **11.1 INTRODUCTION**

The objective of this research project was to ascertain the likely geomorphic processes that produced the debris deposits located at a few isolated localities in the high Drakensberg. The aims were to identify and compare the morphology of the various slope deposits found in eastern Lesotho, analyse the sedimentology and micromorphology of the deposits and in so doing, provide some understanding of the past geomorphic processes that operated at the sites, and finally to undertake a multi-faceted methodological approach to evaluate the feasibility for past Quaternary glaciation in the high Drakensberg. The extent to which these aims and objectives of this research are realised will be discussed in this final chapter, along with the contribution this research will make towards understanding the Quaternary history of the Great Escarpment of southern Africa. Finally, this chapter will discuss the relevance of this research in an international context and identify directions for future research in this region.

### **11.2 EXTENT TO WHICH THE OBJECTIVE AND AIMS ARE REALISED**

The likely geomorphic processes which produced the deposits at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Sites 1 and 2, Leqooa Valley and Sehonghong have been successfully determined through the use of morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological techniques. Various process origins were considered and rejected on the basis of whether the deposits suited the attributes typical to these various process mechanisms. AMS dating also enabled the time of deposition to be determined at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong and Leqooa Valley sites, and for the lower units of the Sehonghong Site 3 deposit. Furthermore, the process origins of the linear slope deposits were further quantified by undertaking a glacial reconstruction history for each site in order to determine whether glaciers could have existed in these areas. These sites were then analysed for solar radiation received and contemporary snow patch distribution, so as to resolve why only certain areas were conducive to glacier formation.

### 11.3 CONTRIBUTION TO THE QUATERNARY HISTORY OF THE GREAT ESCARPMENT

Contradicting views have long existed regarding the Quaternary glacial history of southern Africa, with several studies arguing for glaciation (e.g. Sparrow, 1967a; Marker and Whittington, 1971; Harper, 1969; Dyer and Marker, 1979; Borchert and Sanger, 1981; Sanger, 1988; Hanvey and Lewis, 1990; Marker, 1991; Lewis, 1996; Hall, 1994; Grab, 1996a; Lewis and Illgner, 2001; Mills and Grab, 2005), whilst others have presented alternative hypotheses for the occurrence of these features (e.g. Meadows, 1988; Sumner, 1995; Grab and Hall, 1996; Grab, 2000a; Boelhouwers and Meiklejohn, 2002). Boelhouwers and Meiklejohn (2002) have suggested that the focus of southern African research has tended to be qualitative and lacking in scientific rigour. To this end, the current research has sought to undertake a detailed scientific approach, which will hopefully set the scene for further research undertaken on possible Quaternary deposits in southern Africa. The main concern regarding Quaternary glaciation in the Lesotho highlands has been the lack of precipitation during the LGM, given that this area falls within the summer rainfall season (Hall, 2004) and that precipitation was reduced by approximately 30% during the LGM (Partridge *et al.*, 1999; Tyson and Partridge, 2000).

This research has shown that based on temperature depressions of 6°C, as indicated by various proxy data in southern Africa, glaciers could have existed at the study sites, provided higher precipitation rates occurred than previously suggested. The lack of any proxy data indicating palaeoprecipitation in the high Drakensberg has led to using palaeotemperature data instead, as these are more widespread for southern Africa and are considered to be more robust. It is suggested that precipitation values derived for the study sites based on palaeotemperature data, would provide a better indication of palaeoprecipitation during the LGM, given that glaciers could have existed, which compare well with modern analogues. The palaeoglaciers would have relied on snowblow in order to sustain their existence and it has been suggested that there was the possibility of a greater incidence of cold fronts during the LGM, which would have increased snowfall during that time (Grab and Simpson, 2000), as discussed in Chapter 1. Contemporary snowfall preferentially accumulates at the palaeoglacier sites and remains there for longer periods than elsewhere in the region.

This has been accounted for by investigating solar radiation for a south- and north-facing slope and by modelling hillshade at the study sites.

The general consensus is that southern Africa was never glaciated during the LGM and that features ascribed to past glaciation have been misinterpreted (Preston-Whyte and Tyson, 1988; Hall, 2004). However, the linear deposits presented in this research typify attributes of glacial moraines, indicating that the study areas supported glaciers which compare well with modern analogues. The evidence does not suggest widespread glaciation in the high Drakensberg, given that evidence for the Sehonghong site indicates that this area fell within the periglacial domain, which was dominated by mass wasting processes as opposed to glacial processes. The evidence for relict LGM periglacial features also negates any proposal for widespread glaciation (e.g. Linton, 1969; Nicol, 1973; Dardis and Granger, 1986; Lewis, 1988; Lewis and Hanvey, 1988; Boelhouwers, 1991, 1994, 1998; Marker, 1992; Grab, 1997a, 2000b), given that these would not have survived had the entire area been glaciated. It is therefore proposed that conditions conducive to the formation of small niche/cirque glaciers in the eastern Drakensberg were climatologically restricted to a few sites, where microtopographic (e.g. slope gradient and aspect) and particularly microclimatic factors (e.g. late-lying snow cover, snowblow and solar radiation) played a major role.

#### **11.4 INTERNATIONAL CONTEXT**

This research indicates that during the LGM, the eastern Drakensberg was a periglacial environment, in which isolated small niche/cirque glaciers occurred. The reconstructed ELAs at the study sites between 3083 m a.s.l. and 3171 m a.s.l. (Table 11.1) also contribute to the international reconstructions of former glacier ELAs during the LGM. Similar ELAs for the African continent have been reported from Morocco (between 2500 m a.s.l. and 3600 m a.s.l.) (Messerli, 1967), and slightly higher ELAs from the eastern African mountains (e.g. 3550 m a.s.l. at Mount Kenya and between 3560 m a.s.l. to 3700 m a.s.l. at Mount Elgon) (Mahaney, 1990; Kaser and Osmaston, 2002; Osmaston, 2004). If compared to similar latitudes in the Southern Hemisphere, the reconstructed Drakensberg ELAs also fall within

**Table 11.1** A Summary of similar ELAs to those observed for the Drakensberg in East Africa and the southern hemisphere.

| Sites       | ELAs                           |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Drakensberg | 3083 m a.s.l. to 3171 m a.s.l. |
| Morocco     | 2500 m a.s.l. to 3600 m a.s.l. |
| East Africa | 3550 m a.s.l. to 3700 m a.s.l. |
| Argentina   | 3300 m a.s.l. to 3500 m a.s.l. |
| Tasmania    | 1840 m a.s.l. to 2020 m a.s.l. |

the range suggested for these latitudes. It has been suggested that in the Mendoza Andes of Argentina (35°15'S), ELAs were between 3300 m a.s.l. and 3500 m a.s.l. (Espizua, 1993), whilst in Tasmania (36°S), ELAs were between 1840 m a.s.l. and 2020 m a.s.l. during the LGM (Barrows *et al.*, 2002).

The field evidence presented in Chapters 5, 6 and 7 indicates that the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa Valley deposits are moraines, whilst the Sekhokong Site 2 deposit is a debris flow which was initiated on deglaciation of a small glacier. The glacier reconstructions undertaken in Chapter 10 for these sites indicate that the palaeoglaciers are comparable with modern analogues. The calibrated AMS ages for the moraines indicate that these were deposited after 13 820 yrs BP at Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, after 14 700 yrs BP at Sekhokong Site 1 and after 15 390 yrs BP at Leqooa Valley. This indicates that the moraines were deposited towards the end of the last glacial period and not during the time of maximum cooling (17 500 yrs BP) (Scott, 1982).

There appears to be controversy over whether a cold period equivalent to the Younger Dryas Stadial in north-western Europe occurred in the Southern Hemisphere (Denton *et al.*, 1999; Ivy-Ochs *et al.*, 1999; Turney *et al.*, 2003; Harrison, 2004; Kaplan *et al.*, 2004; Shulmeister *et al.*, 2005). A return to colder conditions has been suggested between 13 800 yrs BP and 11 700 yrs BP for New Zealand (Hellstrom *et al.*, 1998), whilst in Chile, it is suggested that a colder period occurred between 12 000 yrs BP and 10 000 yrs BP (Heusser *et al.*, 1999) (Table 2.10). Similarly, proxy records for southern Africa indicate a return to colder conditions between 15 000 yrs BP and 13 500 yrs BP (Holmgren *et al.*, 2003) (Table 3.2), which is also similar to the ages

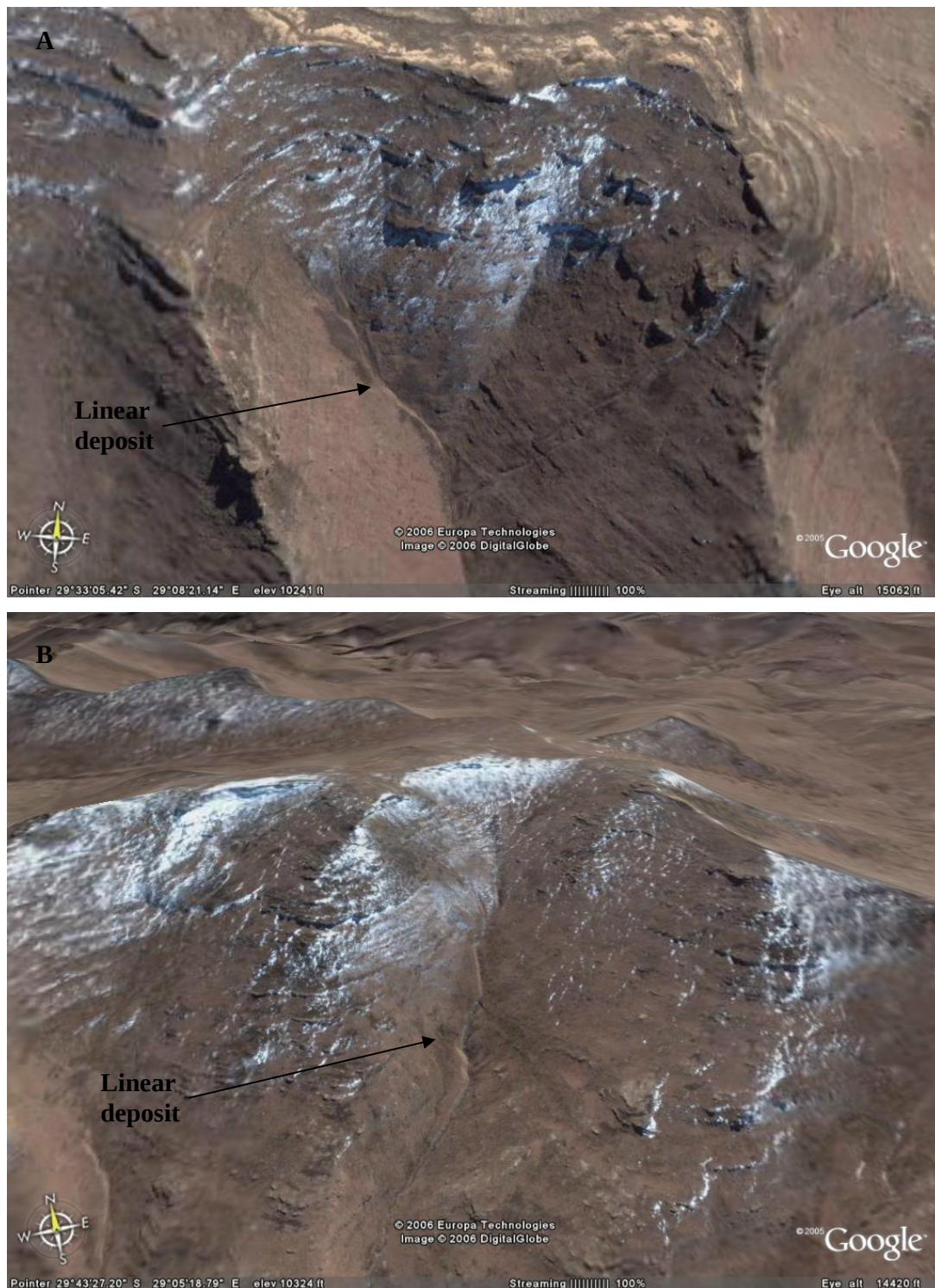
obtained for the linear slope deposits. However, it has been suggested that this time period was not the coldest during the LGM (Scott, 1982; Holmgren *et al.*, 2003). The minimum ages for the deposits suggest that these were deposited between 13 820 yrs BP and 15 390 yrs BP, which agrees with the colder time period suggested by Holmgren *et al.* (2003). Although these moraines were not deposited during the coldest period during the LGM, the presence of the secondary ridges at the Tsatsa-La-Mangaung, Sekhokong Site 1 and Leqooa eastern deposits, indicate that glaciers did extend further than the position of the lateral moraines. This possibly reflects the period of maximum cooling around 17 500 yrs BP (Scott, 1982; Holmgren *et al.*, 2003), with a return to colder conditions around the time of moraine formation, when sediment supply was more readily available.

### **11.5 FUTURE RESEARCH IN THE DRAKENSBERG REGION**

This research has identified that those areas which hosted small glaciers during the Late Pleistocene are also areas supporting contemporary late-lying snow. In order to further support this statement, areas of contemporary late-lying snow cover were studied using Google Earth (available on the internet). Unfortunately the current resolution is not satisfactory for all areas of Lesotho; however this will improve over time. Thus far, two sites have been identified as having possible linear deposits of similar morphologies to those described in this research (Figure 11.1). However, these features are relatively large and any smaller features may not have been identified using Google Earth. It is thus necessary to undertake remote sensing and ground truthing of critical sites across the entire Drakensberg range, so as to better identify other similar deposits and subsequently map these.

### **11.6 SUMMARY**

This research has developed robust criteria permitting the identification and interpretation of deposits and landforms of glacial origin in the Lesotho Highlands. This has been achieved through a range of techniques involving morphological, sedimentological and micromorphological analysis, AMS dating and glacier reconstruction modelling. Each technique was useful in determining the process origin of the various landforms in the Drakensberg; however it is the combination of these techniques which enabled the adequate interpretation of the features investigated.



**Figure 11.1** Linear deposits identified from areas of late-lying snow cover in the Drakensberg.

The use of particle shape, roundness and clast orientation alone would have been problematic given the limitations discussed in Chapter 2, however used in combination with other sedimentological properties, these proved extremely useful. A major drawback with regards to the use of micromorphological techniques is the lack of data relating to supraglacial debris. However, this research and the structures observed within the deposits will help add to the limited literature. The most useful of the techniques was the glacier reconstruction modelling, given that this could determine whether glaciers could have existed under specific climatic conditions, compared to modern analogues. Had the environmental setting not been conducive to the formation of glaciers then this would have been reflected in the thickness of glaciers and associated mass balance characteristics and a glacial origin could have been rejected.

The significance of the existence of former glaciers during the Late Quaternary with regards to palaeoclimatic reconstructions, involves new data regarding palaeoprecipitation at the study sites. The delicate relationship between temperature and precipitation in sustaining glaciers enables the determination of palaeoprecipitation at each site, based on palaeotemperature records. The fact that the study sites could have sustained glaciers indicates that precipitation values discussed in Chapter 10 were higher than at present. Despite Hall's (2004) conclusion that '*no detail can be given as to glacier distribution as, simply none exists*' (p338) for southern Africa, this research has identified the occurrence of five marginal moraines, which indicate that small glaciers did exist in the south-eastern Drakensberg. This study has therefore contributed to the Quaternary evolution of the Drakensberg landscape by identifying that although the environment was predominantly periglacial during the LGM, small glaciers were also present at certain sites.

The relative lack of glacial deposits in the high Drakensberg may be explained by the relatively short time-span of glacier occupancy in the region. Glaciers would only have developed in areas which were topographically conducive, as explained in previous sections, and would have only existed for a few thousand years. The lack of evidence for pronounced cirque glaciation is obvious for this reason, given that minor modification of the landscape by cirque glaciers occurs after approximately 70 000 yrs of occupancy, whilst sharp ridgelines and pronounced cirques become established

after approximately 200 000 yrs of occupancy (Kirkbride and Matthews, 1997). There is still much scope for future Quaternary research in the high Drakensberg, particularly to further quantify the occurrence of glaciers during the LGM and reconstruct the palaeoprecipitation at that time. The identification of similar deposits through the use of contemporary late-lying snow patches as identified in Figure 11.1 suggests that further deposits occur within this region, and which may indicate the presence of further small palaeoglaciers. It is therefore imperative that similar deposits are identified and analysed in order to further quantify the distribution of small niche/cirque glaciers during the LGM.

## References

- Alverson, K., Bradley, R., Briffa, K., Cole, J., Hughes, M., Larocque, I., Pedersen, T., Thompson, L. and Tudhope, S., (2001). Disappearing evidence: the need for a global paleoclimate observing system. *IGBP Global Change Newsletter*. **46**. pp. 2-6.
- Ambrose, D. P., (1976). *The Guide to Lesotho* (2<sup>nd</sup> revised edition). Winchester Press, Johannesburg.
- Andersson, J. G., (1906). Solifluction; a component of subaerial denudation. *Journal of Geology*. **14**. pp. 91-112.
- André, M. F., (1985). Lichénométrie et vitesse d'évolution des versants Arctiques pendant l'Holocène (Regions de la Baie du Roi, Spitsbergen 79° N). *Revue de Géomorphologie Dynamique*. **34**. pp. 49-72.
- Andrews, D. E., (1980). Glacially thrust bedrock: An indication of late Wisconsin climate in western New York State. *Geology*. **8**. pp. 97-101.
- Andrews, J. T., (1972). Glacier power, mass-balance, velocities and erosion potential. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie Supplement Band*. **13**. pp. 1-17.
- Andrews, J. T., (1975). *Glacier Systems*. Duxbury Press, North Scituate, Massachusetts.
- Angeli, M. G., Gasparetto, P., Menotti, R. M., Pasuto, A., Silvano, S. and Soldati, M., (1996). Rock avalanche. In: Dikau, R., Brunsden, D., Schrott, L. and Ibsen, M. – L., (eds). *Landslide Recognition. Identification, Movement and Causes*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 190-201.
- Ariztegui, D., Bianchi, M. M., Masferro, J., LaFargue, E. and Neissen, F., (1997). Interhemispheric synchrony of late-glacial climatic instability as recorded in proglacial Lake Mascardi, Argentina. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **12**. pp. 133-138.
- Arsenault, A. M. and Meigs, A. J., (2005). Contribution of deep-seated bedrock landslides to erosion of a glaciated basin in southern Alaska. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **30**. pp. 1111-1125.
- Ashworth, A. C. and Hoganson, J. W., (1993). The magnitude and rapidity of the climate change marking the end of the Pleistocene in the mid-latitudes of South

- America. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology and Palaeoecology*. **101**. pp. 263-270.
- Augustinus, P. C., (1999). Dating the Late Cenozoic glacial sequence, Pieman River Basin, western Tasmania, Australia. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **18**. pp. 1335-1350.
- Ba, M. and Nicholson, S. E., (2001). Satellite-derived surface radiation budget over the African continent. Part II: Climatologies of the various components. *Journal of Climate*. **14**. pp. 60-76.
- Bailey, R. G. and Rice, R. M., (1969). Soil slippage: an indicator of slope instability on chaparral watersheds of southern California. *Professional Geographer*. **21**. pp. 172-177.
- Bakke, J., Dahl, S. O., Paasche, Ø., Løvlie, R. and Nesje, A., (2005). Glacier fluctuations, equilibrium-line altitudes and palaeoclimate in Lyngen, northern Norway, during the Late glacial and Holocene. *The Holocene*. **15**. pp. 518-540.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (1981). Periglacial landforms and environments in the Northern Highlands of Scotland. PhD thesis (unpublished), University of Edinburgh.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (1987a). The present-day periglaciation of upland Britain. In: Boardman, J., (ed). *Periglacial Processes and landforms in Britain and Ireland*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. Pp. 113-126.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (1987b). Some observations on the morphology and sedimentology of two active protalus ramparts, Lyngen, northern Norway. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **19**. pp. 167-174.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (1989a). Avalanche impact landforms on Ben Nevis, Scotland. *Scottish Geographical Magazine*. **105**. pp. 38-42.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (1989b). The Loch Lomond Readvance on the Isle of Skye, Scotland: glacier reconstruction and palaeoclimatic implications. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **4**. pp. 95-108.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (2002). The Loch Lomond Readvance on the Isle of Mull, Scotland: glacier reconstruction and palaeoclimatic implications. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **17**. pp. 759-771.
- Ballantyne, C. K., (2003). A Scottish sturzström; the Beinn Alligin rock avalanche, Wester Ross. *Scottish Geographical Journal*. **119**. pp. 159-167.

- Ballantyne, C. K. and Kirkbride, M. P., (1986). The characteristics and significance of some late-Glacial protalus ramparts in upland Britain. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **11**. pp. 659-671.
- Ballantyne, C. K. and Benn, D. I., (1994a). Glaciological constraints on protalus rampart development. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 145-153.
- Ballantyne, C. K. and Benn, D. I., (1994b). A Loch Lomond Readvance glacier in Duirinish, NW Skye. *Scottish Journal of Geology*. **30**. pp. 183-186.
- Ballantyne, C. K. and Harris, C., (1994). *The Periglaciation of Great Britain*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Balteanu, D., (1976). Two case studies of mudflows in the Buzau Subcarpathians. *Geografiska Annaler*. **58A**. pp. 165-171.
- Barnola, J., Raynaud, D., Korotevitch, D. and Lorius, C., (1987). Vostok ice core provides 160, 000-year record of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. *Nature*. **329**. pp. 408-414.
- Barrett, P. J. (1980). The shape of rock particles, a critical review. *Sedimentology*. **27**. pp. 291-303.
- Barrows, T. T., Stone, J. O., Fifield, L. K. and Cresswell, R. G., (2001). Late Pleistocene glaciation of the Kosciuszko Massif, Snowy Mountains, Australia. *Quaternary Research*. **55**. pp. 179-189.
- Barrows, T. T., Stone, J. O., Fifield, L. K. and Cresswell, R. G., (2002). The timing of the Last Glacial Maximum in Australia. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **21**. pp. 159-173.
- Barsch, D., (1988). Rock Glaciers. In: Clark, M. J., (ed). *Advances in Periglacial Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester. pp. 69-90.
- Barsch, D., (1996). *Rock glaciers: Indicators for the Present and Former Geoecology in High Mountain Environments*. Springer, Berlin.
- Barsch, D., Fierz, H. and Haeberli, W., (1979). Shallow core drilling and borehole measurements in permafrost of an active rock glacier near Grubengletscher, Wallis, Swiss Alps. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **11**. pp. 215-228.
- Bascomb, C. L. and Carroll, D. M., (1967). Lesotho, East sheet. Soils. D.O.S. (L.R). 3031A. Lesotho Government.
- Bascomb, C. L. and Bullock, P., (1982). Sample preparation and stone content. In: Avery, B. W. and Bascomb, C. L., (eds). *Soil Survey Laboratory Methods* (Revised edition). Soil Survey Technical Monograph. 6. pp. 5-13.

- Becht, M., (1995). Slope erosion in the Alps. In: Slaymaker, O., (ed). *Steepland Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester. pp. 45-61.
- Behre, C. H., (1933). Talus behaviour above timber in the Rocky Mountains. *Journal of Geology*. **41**. pp. 622-635.
- Bell, F. G. and Haskins, D. R., (1997). A geotechnical overview of Katse Dam and Transfer Tunnel, Lesotho, with a note on basalt durability. *Engineering geology*. **46**. pp. 175-198.
- Benedict, J. B., (1970). Downslope soil movement in a Colorado alpine region: Rates, processes and climatic significance. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **1**. pp. 45-48.
- Benedict, J. B., (1976). Frost creep and gelifluction features: A review. *Quaternary Research*. **6**. pp. 55-76.
- Benn, D.I., (1994a). Fabric shape and the interpretation of sedimentary fabric data. *Journal of Sedimentary Research*. **A64**, pp. 910-915.
- Benn, D. I., (1994b). Fluted moraine formation and till genesis below a temperate glacier: Slettmarkbreen, Jotunheimen, Norway. *Sedimentology*. **41**. pp. 279-292.
- Benn, D.I., (1995). Fabric signature of till deformation, Breidamerkurjökull, Iceland. *Journal of Sedimentary Research*. **42**. pp. 735-747.
- Benn, D. I., (2004a). Macrofabric. In: Evans, D. J. A. and Benn, D. I., (eds). *A Practical Guide to the Study of Glacial Sediments*. Arnold, London. pp. 93-114.
- Benn, D. I., (2004b). Clast morphology. In: Evans, D. J. A. and Benn, D. I., (eds). *A Practical Guide to the Study of Glacial Sediments*. Arnold, London. pp. 78-92.
- Benn, D.I. and Ballantyne, C.K., (1993). The description and representation of particle shape. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **18**. pp. 665-672.
- Benn, D. I. and Ballantyne, C. K., (1994). Reconstructing the transport history of glaciogenic sediments: a new approach based on the co-variance of clast shape indices. *Sedimentary Geology*. **91**. pp. 215-227.
- Benn, D. I. and Gemmell, A. M. D., (1997). Calculating equilibrium line altitudes of former glaciers: A new computer spreadsheet. *Glacial Geology and Geomorphology*. [<http://ggg.qub.ac.uk/ggg/>]
- Benn, D. I. and Evans, J. A., (1998). *Glaciers and Glaciation*. Arnold, London.
- Benn, D. I. and Ringrose, T. J., (2001). Random variation of fabric eigenvalues: implications for the use of a-axis fabric data to differentiate till facies. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **26**. pp. 295-306.

- Benn, D. I., Owen, L. A., Osmaston, H. A., Seltzer, G. O., Porter, S. C. and Mark, B., (2005). Reconstruction of equilibrium-line altitudes for tropical and sub-tropical glaciers. *Quaternary International*. **138-139**. pp. 8-21.
- Bennett, M. R. and Glasser, N. F., (1996). *Glacial Geology. Ice Sheets and Landforms*. John Wiley and Sons, Chichester.
- Bennett, M. R., (2001). The morphology, structural evolution and significance of push moraines. *Earth Science Reviews*. **53**. pp. 197-236.
- Bennett, M. R., Waller, R. I., Glasser, N. F., Hambrey, M. J. and Huddart, D., (1999). Glacigenic clast fabrics: Genetic fingerprint or wishful thinking? *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **14**. pp. 125-135.
- Berger, J., Krainer, K. and Mostler, W., (2004). Dynamics of an active rock glacier (Ötztal Alps, Austria). *Quaternary Research*. **62**. pp. 233-242.
- Bertran, P., (1993). Deformation-induced microstructures in soils affected by mass movements. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **18**. pp. 645-660.
- Bertran, P. and Texier, J. P., (1994). Structures sédimentaires dans un cône de flots de débris (Vars, Alpes françaises méridionales). *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 155-170.
- Bertran, P. and Texier, J. P., (1999). Facies and microfacies of slope deposits. *Catena*. **35**. pp. 99-121.
- Bertran, P., Francou, B. and Pech, P., (1993). Stratogénèse associée à la dynamique des coulées à front pierreux en milieu alpin, La Mortice, Alpes Méridionales, France. *Géographie Physique et Quaternaire*. **47**. pp. 93-100.
- Bertran, P., Francou, B. and Texier, J. P., (1995). Stratified slope deposits: The stone-banked sheets and lobes model. In: Slaymaker, O. (ed). *Steepland Geomorphology*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 147-169.
- Bertran, P., Héty, B, Texier, J-P. and Van Steijn, H., (1997). Fabric characteristics of subaerial slope deposits. *Sedimentology*. **44**. pp. 1-16.
- Beskow, G., (1935). Tjåbildningen och tjällyftningen med särskild hänsyn till vägar och järnvägar. *Sveriges Geologiska Undersökning*. Arsbok 26, Ser. C, No 375.
- Bijker, H., (2002). Landslide modelling in the Injisuthi Valley, KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg. MSc (unpublished). University of Pretoria, South Africa.
- Binda, P. L. and Van Eden, J. G., (1972). Sedimentological evidence on the origin of the Precambrian great conglomerate (Kundelungu tillite), Zambia. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*. **12**. pp. 151-168.

- Binnie and Partners., (1971). Lesotho. *Study on Water Resources Development Inventory Report*. London and Maseru.
- Birkeland, P. W., (1999). *Soils and Geomorphology*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Blagborough, J. W. and Breed, W. J., (1967). Protalus ramparts on Navajo Mountain, southern Utah. *American Journal of Science*. **265**. pp.759-772.
- Blair, T. C., (1999). Cause of dominance by sheetfloods vs. debris-flow processes on two adjoining alluvial fans, Death Valley, California. *Sedimentology*. **46**. pp. 1015-1028.
- Blikra, L. H. and Nemec, W., (1998). Postglacial colluvium in western Norway: depositional processes, facies and palaeoclimatic record. *Sedimentology*. **45**. pp. 909-959.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., (1991). Present-day periglacial activity in the Natal Drakensberg: A short review. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **2**. pp. 5-12.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., (1994). Periglacial landforms at Giant's Castle, Natal Drakensberg. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 129-136.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., (1998). *The Present-day frost action environment and its geomorphological significance in the Western Cape Mountains, South Africa*. School of Environmental Studies Occasional Publication Series no. 2, University of the Western Cape.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., (1999). Block deposits in southern Africa and their significance to periglacial autochthonous blockfield development. *Polar Geography*. **23**. pp. 12-22.
- Boelhouwers, J. C. and Meiklejohn, K. I., (2002). Quaternary periglacial and glacial geomorphology of southern Africa: review and synthesis. *South African Journal of Science*. **98**. pp. 47-55.
- Boelhouwers, J. C. and Sumner, P. D., (2003). The palaeoenvironmental significance of southern African blockfields and blockstreams. In: Springman, S. M. and Arenson, L. U., (eds). *Permafrost. 8<sup>th</sup> International conference on permafrost*, Zurich. July 2003. pp. 73-78.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., De Graaf, P. J. and Samsodien, M. A., (1996). The influence of wildfire on soil properties and hydrological response at Devil's Peak, Cape Town. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **107**. pp. 1-10.

- Boelhouwers, J. C., Duiker, J. M. C. and Van Duffeln, E. A., (1998). Spatial, morphological and sedimentological aspects of recent debris flow activity in the Du Toitskloof valley, Western Cape Mountains, South Africa. *South African Journal of Geology*. **101**. pp. 73-89.
- Boelhouwers, J., De Joode, A. and Jager, D., (1999). Relative age dating of debris flow deposits in the Cederberg. *South African Geographical Journal*. **81**. pp. 135-143.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., Holness, S., Meiklejohn, K. I. and Sumner, P. D., (1999). Periglacial blockstream and solifluction mantles. In: Grab, S. W, Boelhouwers, J. C., Hall, K., Meiklejohn, K. I. and Sumner, P., (1999). (eds). *Quaternary Periglacial Phenomena in the Sani Pass Area, Southern Africa*. XV INQUA International Conference Field Guide, 12-15<sup>th</sup> August, 1999. pp. 15-22.
- Boelhouwers, J., Holness, S. and Sumner, P., (2000). Geomorphological characteristics of small debris flows on Juniors Kop, Marion Island, Maritime Sub-Antarctic. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **25**. pp. 341-352.
- Boelhouwers, J. C., Holness, S., Meiklejohn, K. I. and Sumner, P. D., (2002). Observations on a blockstream in the vicinity of Sani Pass, Lesotho highlands, southern Africa. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **13**. pp. 251-257.
- Bonnefille, R., Roeland, J. C. and Guiot, J., (1990). Temperature and rainfall estimates for the past 40 000 years in equatorial Africa. *Nature*. **346**. pp. 347-349.
- Borchert, G. and Sanger, H., (1981). Research findings of a Pleistocene glaciation of the Cape mountain-ridge in South Africa. *Zeitschrift fur Geomorphologie*. **25**. pp. 222-224.
- Boulton, G. S. (1970). Till genesis and fabric in Svalbard, Spitsbergen. In: Goldthwait, R.P. (ed), *Till: a Symposium*. Ohio State University Press, Columbus, OH, pp. 41-72.
- Boulton, G. S., (1976). A genetic classification of tills and criteria for distinguishing tills of different origin. *Geografia*. **12**. pp. 65-80.
- Boulton, G. S., (1978). Boulder shapes and grain-size distribution of debris as indicators of transport paths through a glacier and till genesis. *Sedimentology*. **25**. pp. 773-799.
- Boulton, G. S., (1986). Push moraines and glacier contact fans in marine and terrestrial environments. *Sedimentology*. **33**. pp. 677-698.

- Boulton, G. S. and Eyles, N., (1979). Sedimentation by valley glaciers: A model and genetic classification. In: Schluchter, C. (ed). *Moraines and varves*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 11-23.
- Brackley, I. J. A., Wallace, S., Galliers, R. M. and Lephoma, M., (1991). Geotechnical investigation for Katse Dam, Lesotho. In: Blight, G. E., Fourie, A. B., Luker, I., Mouton, D. J. and Scheurenberg, R. J., (eds). *Proceedings Conference on Geotechnics in the African Environment*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 351-358.
- Brady, N. C., (1990). *The Nature and Property of Soils* (10<sup>th</sup> Edition). MacMillan Publishing Company, New York.
- Bridge, J. S., (2003). *Rivers and Floodplains. Forms, Processes and Sedimentary Record*. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.
- Bridge, J. S., (2004). Alluvium. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 219-221.
- Brown, R. W., Gallagher, K., Gleadow, A. J. W. and Summerfield, M. A., (2000). Morphotectonic evolution of the South Atlantic margins of Africa and South America. In: Summerfield, M. A., (ed). *Geomorphology and Global Tectonics*. John Wiley, New York. Pp. 257-283.
- Brown, R. W., Summerfield, M. A. and Gleadow, A. J. W., (2002). Denudational history along a transect across the Drakensberg Escarpment of southern Africa derived from apatite fission track thermochronology. *Journal of Geophysical research*. **107**. 2350, doi:10.1029/2001JB000745.
- Brunsden, D., (1984). Mudslides. In: Brunsden, D. and Prior, D. B., (eds). *Slope instability*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 363-418.
- Bullock, P., Federoff, N., Jongerius, A., Stoops, G., Tursina, T. and Babel, U., (1985). *Handbook for Soils Thin Section Description*. Waine Research Publications, Wolverhampton.
- Burt, J. E. and Barber, G. M., (1996). *Elementary Statistics for Geographers* (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). The Guilford Press, London.
- Butzer, K. W., (1973). Pleistocene 'periglacial' phenomena in southern Africa. *Boreas*. **2**. pp. 1-11.
- Butzer, K. W. and Helgren, D. M., (1972). Late Cenozoic evolution of the Cape coast between Knysna and Cape St Francis, South Africa. *Quaternary Research*. **2**. pp. 143-169.

- Calles, B. and Kulander, L. (1996). Likelihood of erosive rains in Lesotho. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie. Supplement Band*. **106**. pp. 149-168.
- Campbell, C. S., (1989). Self-lubrication for long runout landslides. *Journal of Geology*. **97**. pp. 653-665.
- Carbutt, C. and Edwards, T. J., (2004). The flora of the Drakensberg alpine centre. *Edinburgh Journal of Botany*. **60**. pp. 581-607.
- Carbutt, C. and Edwards, T. J., (2006). The endemic and near-endemic angiosperms of the Drakensberg Alpine Centre. *South African Journal of Botany*. **72**. pp. 105-132.
- Carr, S. J., (1998). The last glaciation of the North Sea. PhD thesis (unpublished). Royal Holloway University of London.
- Carr, S. J., (2001). A glaciological approach for the discrimination of Loch Lomond Stadial glacial landforms in the Brecon Beacons, South Wales. *Proceedings of the Geologists' Association*, **112**, pp. 253-262.
- Carr, S.J. and Rose, J., (2003). Till fabric patterns and significance: particle response to subglacial stress. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **22**. pp. 1415-1426.
- Carr, S. J. and Coleman, C. G., (2006). An improved technique for the reconstruction of former glacier mass-balance and dynamics. Submitted to *Geomorphology*.
- Carrivick, J. L. and Brewer, T. R., (2004). Improving local estimations and regional trends of glacier equilibrium line altitudes. *Geografiska Annaler*. **86A**. pp. 67-79.
- Carroll, D. M. and Bascomb, C. L., (1967). Notes on the soils of Lesotho. *Technical Bulletin*. **1**. MOD, London.
- Catuneanu, O., Wopfner, H., Eriksson, P. G., Cairncross, B., Rubidge, B. S., Smith, R. M. H. and Hancox, P. J., (2005). The Karoo basins of south-central Africa. *Journal of African Earth Sciences*. **43**. pp. 211-253.
- Chilingar, G. V., (1982). Graph for determining the size of sedimentary particles. *AGI Data Sheet*, 16. American Geological Institute.
- Chinn, T. J., (1983). New Zealand glacial record, 10 to 15000 BP. *Proceedings of the 1<sup>st</sup> CLIMANZ conference*. Australia Academic Science, Canberra. pp. 71-72.
- Chinn, T. J. and Whitehouse, I. E., (1980). Glacier snow line variations in the Southern Alps, New Zealand. In: *World Glacier Inventory – Inventaire Mondial des Glaciers*. IAHS-AISH Publication. **126**. pp. 219-228.
- Chueca, J., (1992). A statistical analysis of the spatial distribution of rock glaciers, Spanish central Pyrenees. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **3**. pp. 261-265.

- Chueca, J. and Julián, A., (2004). Relationship between solar radiation and the development and morphology of small cirque glaciers (Maladeta Mountain Massif, central Pyrenees, Spain). *Geografiska Annaler*. **86A**. pp. 81-89.
- Church., M. and Ryder, J. M., (1972). Paraglacial sedimentation: a consideration of fluvial processes conditioned by glaciation. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **83**. pp. 3059-3071.
- Clapperton, C. M., (1993). *Quaternary Geology and Geomorphology of South America*. Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- Clapperton, C. M., (1997). Fluctuations of local glaciers 30-8 KA B.P: Overview. *Quaternary International*. **38/39**. pp. 3-6.
- Clark, D. G., Steig, E. J., Potter, N., Fitzpatrick, J., Updike, A. B. and Clark, D. M., (1996). Old ice in rock glaciers may provide long-term climate records. *EOS Transactions, American Geophysical Union*. **77**. pp. 221-222.
- Coetzee, J. A., (1967). Pollen analytical studies in East and southern Africa. *Palaeoecology of Africa*. **3**. pp.1-146.
- Colhoun, E. A., (2004). Fabric analysis. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 359.
- Colhoun, E. A. and Fitzsimons, S. J., (1990). Late Cainozoic glaciation in western Tasmania, Australia. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **9**. pp. 199-216.
- Colhoun, E. A., Hannan, D., Kiernan, K., (1996). Late Wisconsin glaciation of Tasmania. *Papers and Proceedings of the Royal Society of Tasmania*. **130**. pp. 33-45.
- Corominas, J., (1995). Evidence of basal erosion and shearing as mechanisms contributing the development of lateral ridges in mudslides, flow-slides and other flow-like gravitational movements. *Engineering Geology*. **39**. pp. 45-70.
- Coronato, A., Martínez, O. and Rabassa, J., (2004). Glaciations in Argentine Patagonia, southern South America. In: Ehlers, J. and Gibbard, P. L., (eds). *Quaternary Glaciations Extent and Chronology, Part III: South America, Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctic*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 49-67.
- Corte, A. E., (1976). Rock glaciers. *Biuletyn Peryglacjalny*. **26**. pp. 175-197.
- Costa, J. E., (1984). Physical geomorphology of debris flows. In: Costa, J. E. and Fleisher, P. J. (eds). *Developments and Applications of Geomorphology*. Springer, Berlin. pp. 268-317.

- Costin, A. B., (1972). Carbon-14 dates from the Snowy Mountains area, south-eastern Australia, and their interpretation. *Quaternary Research*. **2**. pp. 579-590.
- Coussot, P. and Meunier., (1996). Recognition, classification and mechanical description of debris flows. *Earth Science Reviews*. **40**. pp. 209-227.
- Cox, K. G., (1988). The Karoo Province. In: Macdougall, J. D., (ed). *Continental Flood Basalts*. Kluwer, Dordrecht. pp. 239-271.
- Crandell, D. R., (1969). Surficial geology of Mount Rainier National Park, Washington. *U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin* 1547. 41 pp.
- Crozier, M. J., (1973). Techniques for the morphometric analysis of landslips. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **17**. pp. 78-101.
- Crozier, M. J., (2004). Landslide. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 605-608.
- Crozier, M. J., Eyles, R. J., Marx, S. L., McConchie, J. A. and Owen, R. C., (1980). Distribution of landslips in the Wairarapa hill country. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics*. **23**. pp. 575-586.
- Crozier, M. J., Vaughn, C. E. and Tippett, J. M., (1990). Relative instability of colluvium-filled bedrock depressions. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **15**. pp. 329-339.
- Curry, A. M., Walden, J. and Cheshire, D. A., (2001). The Nant Ffrancon 'protalus rampart': evidence for Late Pleistocene paraglacial landsliding in Snowdonia, Wales. *Proceedings of the Geologists' Association*. **112**. pp. 317-330.
- Curry, J. R., (1956). The analysis of two-dimensional orientation data. *Journal of Geology*. **64**. pp. 117-131.
- Dahl, S. O., Nesje, A. and Øvstedal., (1997). Cirque glaciers as morphological evidence for a thin Younger Dryas ice sheet in east-central southern Norway. *Boreas*. **26**. pp. 161-180.
- Dalrymple, J. B., Blong, R. J. and Conacher, A. J., (1968). A hypothetical nine-unit landsurface model. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **12**. pp. 60-76.
- Daniels, J. M., (2003). Floodplain aggradation and pedogenesis in a semiarid environment. *Geomorphology*. **56**. pp. 225-242.
- Dardis, G. F. and Granger, J. E., (1986). Contemporary periglacial phenomena in the Natal Drakensberg, South Africa. *Palaeoecology of Africa*. **17**. pp. 89-93.
- Davis, W. M., (1899). The geographical cycle. *Geographical Journal*. **14**. pp. 481-504.

- Dawson, A., (1990). Protalus ramparts in Cwm Idwal. In Addison, K., Edge, M. J. and Watkins, R., (eds). *The Quaternary of North Wales: Field Guide*. Coventry, Quaternary Research Association. 95.
- Deacon, J. and Lancaster, N., (1988). *Late Quaternary Palaeoenvironments of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Denton, G. H. and Hendy, C. H., (1994). Younger Dryas age advance of Franz Josef Glacier in the Southern Alps of New Zealand. *Science*. **264**. pp. 1434-1437.
- Denton, G. H., Heusser, C. J., Lowell, T. V., Moreno, P. I., Anderson, B. G., Heusser, L. E., Schlüchter, C. and Marchant, D. R., (1999). Interhemispheric linkage of paleoclimate during the last glaciation. *Geografiska Annaler*. **81A**. pp. 107-153.
- de Scally, F. A. and Owens, I. F., (2005). Depositional processes and particle characteristics on fans in the Southern Alps, New Zealand. *Geomorphology*. **69**. pp. 46-56.
- de Villiers, S., (2000). The development of a spatial database for research into cryogenic processes and landforms in southern Africa. MSc (unpublished). University of Pretoria, Pretoria, South Africa.
- DeWolf, Y., (1988). Stratified slope deposits. In: Clark, M. J., (1988). *Advances in Periglacial Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester. pp. 91-110.
- Dikau, R., (2004a). Mass Movement. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp.644-653.
- Dikau, R., (2004b). Sturzström. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 1009.
- Dikau, R., Rasemann, S. and Schmidt, J., (2004). Hillslope form. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 516-521.
- Dingle, R. V., Giesser, W. G. and Newton, A. R., (1983). *Mesozoic and Tertiary Geology of Southern Africa*. A.A. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- Dobkins, J. E. and Folk, R. L., (1970). Shape development on Tahiti – Nui. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **40**. pp. 1167-1203.
- Dollar, E. S. J. and Rowntree, K. M., (1995). Hydroclimatic trends, sediment sources and geomorphic response in the Bell River catchment, Eastern Cape Drakensberg, South Africa. *South African Geographical Journal*. **77**. pp. 21-32.
- Dowdeswell, J. A., (1982). *Debris transport paths and sediment flux through the Grinnell Ice Cap, Frobisher Bay, Baffin Island, N.W.T., Canada*. M.A. thesis (unpublished). Boulder, University of Colorado.

- Dowdeswell, J.A. and Sharp, M.J. (1986). Characterization of pebble fabrics in modern terrestrial glacigenic sediments. *Sedimentology*. **33**. pp. 699-710.
- Downie, C., (1964). Glaciations of Mount Kilimanjaro, Northeast Tanganyika. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **75**. pp.1-16.
- Drake, L. D., (1974). Till fabric control by clast shape. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **85**. pp. 247-250.
- Dreimanis, A., (1988). Tills: their genetic terminology and classification. In: Goldthwait, R. P. and Matsch, C. L., (eds). *Genetic Classification of Glacigenic Deposits*. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 17-83.
- Dube, L. T. (2002). Climate of southern Africa. *South African Geographical Journal*. **84**. pp. 125-138.
- Duncan, A. R., Bristow, J. W. and Brauteseth, M., (1983). *Karoo Database Compilation*. Department of Geochemistry, University of Cape Town.
- Duncan, A. R., Erlank, A. J. and Marsh, J. S., (1984). Regional geochemistry of the Karoo igneous province. In: Erlank, A. J., (ed). *Petrogenesis of the volcanic rocks of the Karoo Province*. Geological Survey of South Africa, Johannesburg, Special Publication. 13. pp. 355-388.
- Duncan, R. A., Hooper, P. R., Rehacek, J., Marsh, J. S. and Duncan, A. R., (1997). The timing and duration of the Karoo igneous event, southern Gondwana. *Journal of Geophysical Research*. **102**. pp. 18127-18138.
- Dyer, T. G. J. and Marker, M.E. (1979). On some aspects of Lesotho Hollows. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **23**, pp. 256-270.
- Dyke, A. S., (1990). A lichenometric study of Holocene rock glaciers and Neoglacial moraines, Frances Lake Map Area, southeastern Yukon Territory and NWT. *Geological Survey of Canada Bulletin*. **394**. 33 pp.
- Dyke, A. S., Andrews, J. T. and Miller, G. H., (1982). Quaternary geology of the Cumberland Peninsula, Baffin Island, District of Franklin. *Geological Survey of Canada Memoir*. **403**. 32 pp.
- Eales, H. V., Marsh, J. S. and Cox, K. G., (1984). The Karoo igneous province: an introduction. In: Erlank, A. J., (ed). *Petrogenesis of the Volcanic Rocks of the Karoo Province*. Special Publication of the Geological Society of South Africa. 13. pp. 1-26.
- Eckert, J. B., (2002). Lesotho's food priorities. *Food Policy*. **8**. pp. 76-80.

- Elliot, G., (1996). Microfabric evidence for podzolic soil inversion by solifluction processes. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **21**. pp. 467-476.
- Elliot, G. and Worsley, P., (1999). The sedimentology, stratigraphy and  $^{14}\text{C}$  dating of a turf-banked solifluction lobe: evidence for Holocene slope instability at Okstindan, northern Norway. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **14**. pp. 175-188.
- Ellis, A. and Mellor, A., (1995). *Soils and Environment*. Routledge, London.
- Ellis-Gruffydd, I. D., (1977). Late Devensian glaciation in the upper Usk basin. *Cambria*. **4**. pp. 46-55.
- Eriksson, P. G., (2000). The geological template. In: Fox, R. and Rowntree, K., (eds). *The Geography of South Africa in a Changing World*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 257-283.
- Espizua, L. E., (1993). Quaternary glaciations in the Río Mendoza Valley, Argentine Andes. *Quaternary research*. **40**. pp. 150-162.
- Espizua, L. E., (1999). Chronology of Late Pleistocene glacier advances in the Río Mendoza Valley, Argentina. *Global and Planetary Change*. **22**. 193-200.
- Espizua, L. E., (2004). Pleistocene glaciations in the Mendoza Andes, Argentina. In: Ehlers, J. and Gibbard, P. L., (eds). *Quaternary Glaciations Extent and Chronology, Part III: South America, Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctic*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 69-73.
- Etzelmüller, B., Hagen, J. O., Vatne, G., Ødegård, R. S. and Sollid, J. L., (1996). Glacier debris accumulation and sediment deformation influenced by permafrost, examples from Svalbard. *Annals of Glaciology*. **22**. pp. 53-62.
- Evans, D. J. A., (1993). High latitude rock glaciers: a case study of form and processes in the Canadian Arctic. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **4**. pp. 17-35.
- Evin, M., (1987). Lithology and fracture control of rock glaciers in southwestern Alps of France and Italy. In: Giardino, J. R., Shroder, J. F. and Vitek, J. D., (eds). *Rock Glaciers*. Allen and Unwin, Boston. pp. 83-106.
- Eyles, N., (1983). *Glacial Geology: An Introduction for Engineers and Earth Scientists*. Pergamon, Oxford.
- Eyles, N. and Paul, M. A., (1983). Landforms and sediment resulting from former periglacial climates. In: Eyles, N., (ed). *Glacial Geology: An Introduction for Engineers and Earth Scientists*. Pergamon Press, Oxford. pp. 111-139.

- Fairbridge, R. W., (1968). *The Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Reinhold, New York.
- Farrell, K. M., (1987). Sedimentology and facies architecture of overbank deposits of the Mississippi River, False River Region, Louisiana. In: Ethridge, F. G., Flores, R. M. and Harvey, M. D., (eds). *Recent Developments in Fluvial Sedimentology*. SEM Special Publication. **39**. pp. 111-120.
- Fitch, F. J. and Miller, J. A., (1971). Potassium-Argon ages of Karoo volcanic rocks from Lesotho. *Bulletin of Volcanology*. **35**. pp. 64-84.
- Fitzpatrick, R. W., (1978). Periglacial soils with fossil permafrost horizons in southern Africa. *Annals of the Natal Museum*. **23**. pp. 475-484.
- Folk, R. L., (1955). Student operator error in determination of roundness, sphericity and grain size. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **6**. pp. 297-301.
- Folk, R.L. and Ward, W.C. (1957). Brazos river bar: a study of the significance of grain size parameters. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **27**. pp. 3-26.
- Francou, B., (1988). Eboulis stratifiés dans le Hautes Andes Centrales du Pérou. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Neue Folge*. **32**. pp. 47-76.
- Francou, B., (1990). Stratification mechanisms in slope deposits in high subequatorial mountains. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **1**. pp. 249-263.
- Freiman, M. T., D'Abreton, P. C. and Piketh, S. J., (1998). Regional airflow over the southern Drakensberg mountains of South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*. **94**. pp. 561-566.
- French, H. M., (1988). Active layer processes. In: Clark, M. J., (ed). *Advances in Periglacial Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. pp. 151-177.
- French, H. M., (1996). *The Periglacial Environment* (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). Longman. Harlow.
- Fukui, K., (2003). Permafrost and surface movement of an active protalus rampart in the Kuranosuke Cirque, the Northern Japanese Alps. In: Phillips, M., Springman, S. M. and Arenson, L. U., (eds). *Permafrost*. 8<sup>th</sup> International conference on permafrost, Zurich. July 2003. pp. 265-270.
- Furbish, D. J. and Andrews, J. T., (1984). The use of hypsometry to indicate long-term stability and response of valley glaciers to change in mass transfer. *Journal of Glaciology*. **30**. pp. 199-211.
- Furon, R., (1963). *Geology of Africa*. Oliver and Boyd Ltd, London.
- Gale, S. J. and Hoare, P. G., (1991). *Quaternary Sediments: Petrographic Methods for the Study of Unlithified Rocks*. Belhaven Press, London.

- Gage, M., (1958). Late Pleistocene glaciations of the Waimakariri Valley, Canterbury, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics*. **1**. pp. 123-155.
- Garland, G. G. and Olivier, M. J., (1993). Predicting landslides from rainfall in a humid, sub-tropical region. *Geomorphology*. **8**. pp. 165-173.
- Gasse, F. Lédée, V., Massault, M. and Fontes, J. C., (1989). Water-level fluctuations of Lake Tanganyika in phase with oceanic changes during the last glaciation and deglaciation. *Nature*. **342**. pp. 57-59.
- Giardino, J. R. and Vick, S. G., (1987). Geologic engineering aspects of rock glaciers. In: Giardino, J. R., Shroder, F. and Vitek, J. D., (eds). *Rock Glaciers*. Allen and Unwin, Boston. pp. 265-287.
- Giardino, J. R. and Vitek, J. D., (1985). A statistical interpretation of the fabric of a rock glacier. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **17**. pp. 165-177.
- Giardino J. R. and Vitek, J. D., (1987). The position of rock glaciers in landform continuum models. *Abstracts with Programs*. **19**. No 7, Geological Society of America.
- Giardino, J. R. and Vitek, J. D., (1988). The significance of rock glaciers in the glacial-periglacial landscape continuum. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **3**. pp. 97-103.
- Gilchrist, A. R., (1995). On appraising classical models of landscape evolution for passive continental margins. In: Slaymaker, O., (ed). *Steepland Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester. pp. 7-26.
- Gilchrist, A. R. and Summerfield, M. A., (1990). Differential denudation and flexural isostasy in formation of rifted-margin upwarps. *Nature*. **346**. pp. 739-742.
- Glen, J. W., (1952). Experiments on the deformation of ice. *Journal of Glaciology*. **2**. pp. 111-114.
- Glen, J. W., Donner, J. J. and West, R. G., (1957). On the mechanism by which stones in till become oriented. *American Journal of Science*. **255**. pp. 194-205.
- Goodbred, S. L. and Hine, A. C., (1995). Coastal storm deposition: salt marsh response to a severe extratropical storm, March 1993, west-central Florida. *Geology*. **23**. pp. 679-682.
- Goodbred, S. L., Wright, E. E. and Hine, A. C., (1998). Seal-level change and storm-surge deposition in a Late Holocene Florida salt marsh. *Journal of Sedimentary Research*. **68**. pp. 240-252.

- Gopinathan, K. K., (1988a). A simple method for determining solar radiation on a horizontal surface. *Solar and Wind Technology*. **5**. pp. 581-583.
- Gopinathan, K. K., (1988b). Empirical correlations for diffuse solar radiation. *Solar Energy*. **40**. pp. 369-370.
- Gopinathan, K. K., (1988c). The distribution of global and sky radiation throughout Lesotho. *Solar and Wind Technology*. **5**. pp. 103-106.
- Gopinathan, K. K., (1991). Studies on the distribution and variation of radiation intensity. *Energy Conversion and Management*. **32**. pp. 255-262.
- Gordon, L. S. and Ballantyne, C. K., (2006). 'Protalus Ramparts' on Navajo Mountain, Utah, USA: reinterpretation as blockslope-sourced rock glaciers. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **17**. pp. 179-187.
- Goudie, A. (1981). *Geomorphological Techniques*. George Allen and Unwin. London.
- Goudie, A. S., (2004). Colluvium. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 173.
- Goudie, A. S., (2005). The drainage of Africa since the Cretaceous. *Geomorphology*. **67**. pp. 437-456.
- Grab, S. W., (1994a). Geocryological features of the Sani Pass and Drakensberg summit region. In: Grab, S., (ed). *Field Guide to the Greater Pietermaritzburg and Sani Pass (Natal Drakensberg) Areas*. Field Guide to the mid-conference excursions of the Southern African Association of Geomorphologists Biennial Conference, Pietermaritzburg, 23<sup>rd</sup> – 27<sup>th</sup> January, 1994. pp. 35-38.
- Grab, S. W., (1994b). Thufur in the Mohlesi Valley, Lesotho, southern Africa. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 111-118.
- Grab, S. W., (1994c). Climate. In: Grab, S., (ed). *Field Guide to the Greater Pietermaritzburg and Sani Pass (Natal Drakensberg) Areas*. Field Guide to the mid-conference excursions of the Southern African Association of Geomorphologists Biennial Conference, Pietermaritzburg, 23<sup>rd</sup> – 27<sup>th</sup> January, 1994. pp. 10-15.
- Grab, S.W. (1996a). Debris deposits in the high Drakensberg, South Africa: Possible indicators for plateau, niche and cirque glaciation. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie. Supplement Band*. **103**. pp. 389-403.
- Grab, S. W., (1996b). A note on the morphology of miniature sorted stripes at Mafadi summit, high Drakensberg. *South African Geographical Journal*. **78**. pp. 59-63.

- Grab, S. W., (1997a). *An evaluation of the periglacial morphology in the high Drakensberg and associated environmental implications*. PhD thesis (unpublished). University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg, South Africa.
- Grab, S. W., (1997b). Analysis and characteristics of high altitude air temperature data from northern Lesotho: Implications for cryogeomorphic occurrences. *Geoöko Plus*. **4**. pp.109-118.
- Grab, S. W., (1998). Non-sorted patterned ground in the high Drakensberg: some new data. *The Geographical Journal*. **164**. pp. 19-31.
- Grab, S. W., (1999a). Environmental Setting. In: Grab, S. W, Boelhouwers, J. C., Hall, K., Meiklejohn, K. I. and Sumner, P., (1999). (eds). *Quaternary Periglacial Phenomena in the Sani Pass Area, Southern Africa*. XV INQUA International Conference Field Guide, 12 -15<sup>th</sup> August, 1999. pp. 1-9.
- Grab, S. W., (1999b). Block and debris deposits in the High Drakensberg, Lesotho, southern Africa: Implications for high altitude slope processes. *Geografiska Annaler*. **81A**. pp. 1-16.
- Grab, S. W., (2000a). Periglacial features. In: Partridge, T. C. and Maude, R. R., (eds). *The Cenozoic of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 207-217.
- Grab, S. W., (2000b). Stone-banked lobes and environmental implications, High Drakensberg, southern Africa. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **11**. pp. 177-187.
- Grab, S.W., (2002). Characteristics and palaeoenvironmental significance of relict sorted patterned ground, Drakensberg plateau, southern Africa. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **21**. pp. 1729-1744.
- Grab, S. W., (2004). Thermal regime through a sorted circle and stone-banked lobe, Drakensberg, southern Africa. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **48**. pp. 501-518.
- Grab, S. W. and Hall, K., (1996). North-facing hollows in the Lesotho/Drakensberg mountains: hypothetical palaeoenvironmental reconstructions? *South African Journal of Science*. **92**. pp. 183-184.
- Grab, S. W. and Simpson, A. J., (2000). Climatic and environmental impacts of cold fronts over KwaZulu-Natal and the adjacent interior of southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*. **96**. pp. 602-608.

- Grab, S. W., Boelhouwers, J. C., Hall, K., Meiklejohn, K. I. and Sumner, P., (1999). Quaternary periglacial phenomena in the Sani Pass area, southern Africa. XV INQUA International Conference Field Guide, 12 -15<sup>th</sup> August, 1999.
- Grab, S. W., Mills, S. C. and Scott, L., (in prep). Some aspects of the Late Quaternary environment in the upper Sehonghong Valley, Drakensberg of eastern Lesotho. For: *The South African Geographical Journal*.
- Graham, J., (1988). Collection and analysis of field data. In: Tucker, M., (ed). *Techniques in Sedimentology*. Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford. pp. 5-62.
- Graham, D. J. and Midgley, N. G., (2000). Graphical representation of particle shape using triangular diagrams: an excel spreadsheet method. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **64**. pp. 910-915.
- Granger, E. and Bredenkamp, G., (1996). Alti Mountain Grassland. In: Low, B. A. and Rebelo, A. T. G., (eds). *Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland*. Department of Environmental affairs and Tourism, Pretoria. pp. 49.
- Granger, J. E. and Schulze, R. E., (1977). Incoming solar radiation patterns and vegetation response: examples from the Natal Drakensberg. *Vegetatio*. **35**. pp. 47-54.
- Gray, J. M., (1982). The last glaciers (Loch Lomond Advance) in Snowdonia, N. Wales. *Geological Journal*. **17**. pp. 113-133.
- Griffiths, J. F., (1972). *Climates of Africa*. Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- Grosjean, M., Geyh, M. A., Messerli, B., Schreier, H. and Veit, H., (1998). A late-Holocene (<2600 BP) glacial advance in the south-central Andes (29° S), northern Chile. *The Holocene*. **8**. pp. 473-479.
- Grosval'd, M. G. and Kotlyakov, V. M., (1969). Present-day glaciers in the USSR and some data on their mass balance. *Journal of Glaciology*. **8**. pp. 9-22.
- Guadagno, F. M., Forte, R., Revellino, P., Fiorillo, F. and Focareta, M., (2005). Some aspects of the initiation of debris avalanches in the Campania region: The role of morphological slope discontinuities and the development of failure. *Geomorphology*. **66**. pp. 237-254.
- Haeblerli, W., (1985). Creep of mountain permafrost; internal structure and flow of alpine rock glaciers. *Mitteilungen der Versuchsanstalt für Wasserbau Hydrologie und Glaziologie*. **77**. 142pp.
- Haeblerli, W., (1989). Glacier ice-cored rock glaciers in the Yukon Territory, Canada? *Journal of Glaciology*. **35**. pp. 294-295.

- Haerberli, W., (2000). Modern research perspectives relating to permafrost creep and rock glaciers: a discussion. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **11**. pp. 290-293.
- Haerberli, W. and Vonder Mühl., (1996). On the characteristics and possible origins of ice in rock glacier permafrost. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie. Supplement Band*. **104**. pp. 43-57.
- Haldorsen, S., (1981). Grain-size distribution of subglacial till and its relation to subglacial crushing and abrasion. *Boreas*. **10**. pp. 91-105.
- Hall, K., (1991). The allocation of the freeze-thaw weathering mechanism in geocryological studies: a critical comment. *South African Geographical Journal*. **73**. pp. 10-13.
- Hall, K., (1992). A discussion of the need for greater rigour in southern African cryogenic studies. *South African Geographical Journal*. **74**. pp. 69-71.
- Hall, K., (1994). Cutbacks in the Natal Drakensberg Escarpment: a hypothesis on their origin. *South African Journal of Science*. **90**. pp. 263-264.
- Hall, K., (1997). Observations on 'cryoplanation' benches in Antarctica. *Antarctic Science*. **9**. pp. 181-187.
- Hall, K., (2004). Glaciation in southern Africa. In *Quaternary Glaciations – Extent and Chronology, Part III: South America, Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctic*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 337-338.
- Hall, K. and Meiklejohn, I., (1997). Some observations regarding protalus ramparts. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **8**. pp. 245-249.
- Hall, K., Thorn, C. E., Matsuoka, N. and Prick, A., (2002). Weathering in cold regions: some thoughts and perspectives. *Progress in Physical Geography*. **26**. pp. 577-603.
- Ham, N. R. and Mickelson, D. M., (1994). Basal till fabric and deposition at Burroughs Glacier, Glacier Bay, Alaska. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **106**. pp. 1552-1559.
- Hambrey, M. J., (1976). Debris, bubble and crystal fabric characteristics of foliated glacier ice, Charles Rabots Breen, Oksindan, Norway. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **8**. pp. 49-60.
- Hambrey, M., (1994). *Glacial Environments*. UCL Press, London.
- Hambrey, M. J. and Lawson, W., (2000). Structural styles and deformation fields in glaciers: a review. In: Maltman, A. J., Hubbard, B. and Hambrey, M. J., (eds).

- Deformation of Glacial Materials*. Geological Society Special Publication No. 176, London. pp. 59-83.
- Hamilton, A. C., (1982). *Environmental History of East Africa: A Study of the Quaternary*. Academic Press inc. Ltd, London.
- Hanson, P. R., Mason, J. A. and Goble, R. J., (2006). Fluvial terrace formation along Wyoming's Laramie Range as a response to increased Late Pleistocene flood magnitudes. *Geomorphology*. **76**. pp. 12-25.
- Hanvey, P. and Lewis, C. A., (1991). Sedimentology and genesis of slope deposits at Sonskyn, eastern Cape Drakensberg, South Africa. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **2**. pp. 31-38.
- Hanvey, P. M. and Marker, M. E., (1992). Present-day periglacial microforms in the Lesotho Highlands: Implications for past climatic conditions. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **3**. pp. 353-361.
- Hanvey, P. M. and Marker, M. E., (1994). Sedimentary sequences in the Tlaneeg Pass area, Lesotho. *South African Geographical Journal*. **76**. pp. 63-67.
- Hanvey, P. M., Lewis, C. A. and Lewis, G. E., (1986). Periglacial slope deposits in Carlisle's Hoek, Near Rhodes, Eastern Cape Province. *South African Geographical Journal*. **68**. pp. 164-174.
- Hanvey, P. M. and Lewis, C. A., (1990). A preliminary report on the age and significance of Quaternary lacustrine deposits at Birnam, northeast Cape Province, South Africa. *South African Journal of Science*. **86**. pp. 271-273.
- Harden, C., (2004). Terrace, river. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 1039-1043.
- Hardwick, D., (in prep). *Classification of mass movement features in the southern Drakensberg*. MSc. University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg.
- Harper, G., (1969). Periglacial evidence in southern Africa during the Pleistocene Epoch. *Palaeoecology of Africa and the Surrounding Islands*. **4**. pp. 71-101.
- Harris, C., (1981a). *Periglacial Mass-wasting: a review of research*. Geo Abstracts, Norwich.
- Harris, C., (1981b). Microstructures in solifluction sediments from south Wales and north Norway. *Biuletyn Peryglacjalny*. **28**. pp. 221-226.
- Harris, C., (1986). Some observations concerning the morphology and sedimentology of a protalus rampart, Okstindan, Norway. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **11**. pp. 673-676.

- Harris, C., (1987). Mechanisms of mass movement in periglacial environments. In: Anderson, M. G. and Richards, K. S., (eds). *Slope Stability*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester. pp. 531-559.
- Harris, C. and Ellis, S., (1980). Micromorphology of soils in soliflucted materials, Okstindan, northern Norway. *Geoderma*. **23**. pp. 11-29.
- Harris, C. and Wright, M. D., (1980). Some last glaciation drift deposits near Pontypridd, South Wales. *Geological Journal*. **15**. pp. 7-20.
- Harris, C. and Lewkowicz, A. G., (1993). Micromorphological investigations of active-layer detachment slides, Ellesmere Island, Canadian Arctic. *Proceedings of the 6<sup>th</sup> International Conference on Permafrost, Beijing, China*. S. China University of Technology Press. pp. 232-237.
- Harris, S. A. and Pedersen, D. E., (1998). Thermal regimes beneath coarse blocky materials. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **9**. pp. 107-120.
- Harris, W. F., Mildenhall, D. C. and McQueen, D. R., (1983). Past and present effects of the last glacial episode (Otiran) in the Cook Strait area. *Proceedings of the 1<sup>st</sup> CLIMANZ Conference*. Australia Academic Science, Canberra.
- Harrison, S., (2002). Lithological variability of Quaternary slope deposits in the Cheviot Hills, UK. *Proceedings of the Geologists' Association*. **113**. pp. 121-138.
- Harrison, S., (2004). The Pleistocene glaciations of Chile. In: Ehlers, J. and Gibbard, P. L., (eds). *Quaternary Glaciations Extent and Chronology, Part III: South America, Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctic*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 89-103.
- Harrison, S. and Anderson, E., (2001). A late Devensian rock glacier in the Nantlle Valley, North Wales. *Glacial Geology and Geomorphology*. [<http://boris.qub.ac.uk/ggg/papers/full/2001/rp012001/rp01.html>].
- Hastenrath, S. L., (1971). On the Pleistocene snow-line depression in the arid regions of the South American Andes. *Journal of Glaciology*. **10**. pp. 255-267.
- Hastenrath, S. L., (1974). Glaziale und periglaziale Formbildung in Hoch-Seymen, Nord Äthiopien. *Erdkunde*. **28**. pp. 176-186.
- Hastenrath, S. L., (1984). *The Glaciers of Equatorial East Africa*. Reidel, Dordrecht.
- Hastenrath, S. L. and Wilkinson, J., (1973). A contribution to the periglacial morphology of Lesotho, southern Africa. *Biuletyn Peryglacjalny*. **22**. pp. 157-167.
- Hastenrath, S. L. and Greischar, L., (1997). Glacier recession on Kilimanjaro, East Africa. *Journal of Glaciology*. **43**. pp. 455-459.

- Hatcher, R. D., Jr., (1990). *Structural Geology. Principles, Concepts and Problems*. Macmillan, New York.
- Hattingh, J., (1996). Fluvial response to allocyclic influences during the development of the lower Sundays River, Eastern Cape, South Africa. *Quaternary International*. **33**. pp. 3-10.
- Hawkins, F., (1985). Equilibrium-line altitudes and palaeoenvironments in the Merchants Bay area, Baffin Island, NWT, Canada. *Journal of Glaciology*. **31**. pp. 205-213.
- Heaton, T. H. E., Talma, A.S. and Vogel, J.C. (1986). Dissolved gas palaeotemperatures and  $^{18}\text{O}$  variations derived from groundwater near Uitenhage, South Africa. *Quaternary Research*. **56**. pp. 79-88.
- Heggem, E. S. F., Etzelmüller, B. and Berthling, I., (2001). Topographic radiation balance models: Sensitivity and application in periglacial geomorphology. *Norsk Geografisk Tidsskrift*. **55**. pp. 203-211.
- Heim, A., (1932). *Bergsturz und Menschenleben*. Frez and Wasmuth, Zürich.
- Hellstrom, J., McCulloch, M. and Stone, J., (1998). A detailed 31,000-year record of climate and vegetation change, from the isotope geochemistry of two New Zealand speleothems. *Quaternary Research*. **50**. pp. 167-178.
- Hendy, C. H. and Wilson, A. T., (1968). Palaeoclimatic data from speleothems. *Nature*. **219**. pp. 48-51.
- Heusser, C. J., (1993). Late-glacial of southern South America. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **12**. pp. 345-350.
- Heusser, C. J., Heusser, L. E. and Lowel, T. V., (1999). Palaeoecology of the southern Chilean Lake District-Isla Grande de Chiloé during middle-late Llanquihue glaciation and deglaciation. *Geografiska Annaler*. **81A**. pp. 231-284.
- Hewitt, K., (1999). Quaternary moraines vs catastrophic rock avalanches in the Karakoram Himalaya, northern Pakistan. *Quaternary Research*. **51**. pp. 220-237.
- Hicock, S. R., Goff, J. R., Lian, O. B. and Little, E. C., (1996). On the interpretation of subglacial till fabric. *Journal of Sedimentary Research*. **A66**. pp. 928-934.
- Hinkel, K. and Outcalt, S. I., (1994). Identification of heat transfer processes during soil cooling, freezing and thaw in central Alaska. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 217-235.

- Hoey, T. B., (2004). The size of sedimentary particles. In Evans, D. J. A. and Benn, D. I., (eds). *A Practical Guide to the Study of Glacial Sediments*. Arnold, London. pp. 51-77.
- Hoganson, J. W. and Ashworth, A. C., (1992). Fossil beetle evidence for climatic change 18,000-10,000 years B.P. in south-central Chile. *Quaternary Research*. **37**. pp. 101-116.
- Holmes, A., (1965). *Principles of Physical Geology* (2<sup>nd</sup> edition). Thomas Nelson, London.
- Holmgren, K., Lee-Thorp, J. A., Cooper, G. R. J., Lundblad, K., Partridge, T. C., Scott, L., Sithaldeen, R., Talma, A. S. and Tyson, P. D., (2003). Persistent millennial-scale climatic variability over the past 25,000 years in southern Africa. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **22**. pp. 2311-2326.
- Hooker, B. L. and Fitzharris, B. B., (1999). The correlation between climatic parameters and the retreat and advance of the Franz Josef Glacier. *Global Planetary Change*. **22**. pp. 39-48.
- Hooper, P. R., Rehacek, J., Duncan, R. A., Marsh, J. S. and Duncan, A. R., (1993). The basalts of Lesotho, Karoo Province, southern Africa. *EOS, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*. **74**. pp. 553.
- Hormes, A., Preusser, F., Denton, G., Hajdas, I., Weiss, D., Stocker, T., Schlüchter, C., (2003). Radiocarbon and luminescence dating of overbank deposits in outwash sediments of the last glacial maximum in North Westland, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics*. **46**. pp. 95-106.
- Howard, J. L., (1992). An evaluation of shape indices as palaeoenvironmental indicators using quartzite and metavolcanic clasts in Upper Cretaceous to Palaeogene beach, river and submarine fan conglomerates. *Sedimentology*. **39**. pp. 471-486.
- Howard, W. R., (1985). Late Quaternary southern Indian Ocean circulation. *South African Journal of Science*. **81**. pp. 253-254.
- Hsü, K. J., (1975). Catastrophic debris streams (sturzströms) generated by rockfall. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **86**. pp. 129-140.
- Hubbard, B. and Glasser, N., (2005). *Field Techniques in Glaciology and Glacial Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester.
- Huddart, D., (2004). Supraglacial. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 1026-1027.

- Hugenholtz, C. H. and Lewkowicz, A. G., (2002). Morphometry and environmental characteristics of turf-banked solifluction lobes, Kluane Range, Yukon Territory, Canada. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **13**. pp. 301-313.
- Hughes, P. D., Gibbard, P. L. and Woodward, J. C., (2003). Relict rock glaciers as indicators of Mediterranean Palaeoclimate during the last glacial maximum (Late Würmian) in northeast Greece. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **18**. pp. 431-440.
- Humlum, O., (1982). Rock glacier types on Disko, central West Greenland. *Geografisk Tidsskrift*. **82**. pp. 59-66.
- Humlum, O., (1984). Altitudinal trends of talus-derived lobate rock glaciers on Disko, central West Greenland. *XXV International geographical Congress, Royal Danish Society, Occasional Papers*. **7**. pp. 35-39.
- Humlum, O., (1985). Changes in texture and fabric of particles in glacial traction with distance from source, Myrdalsjökull, Iceland. *Journal of Glaciology*. **31**. pp. 150-156.
- Humlum, O., (1988). Rock glacier appearance level and rock glacier initiation line altitude: a methodological approach to the study of rock glaciers. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **20**. pp. 160-178.
- Humlum, O., (1996). Origin of rock glaciers: observations from Mellemfjord, Disko Island, central West Greenland. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **7**. pp. 361-380.
- Humlum, O., (1997). Younger Dryas glaciation in Söderåsen, South Sweden: An analysis of meteorologic and topographic controls. *Geografiska Annaler*. **79A**. pp. 1-15.
- Humlum, O., (1998a). Rock glaciers on the Faeroe Islands, the North Atlantic. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **13**. pp. 293-307.
- Humlum, O., (1998b). Active layer thermal regime at three rock glaciers in Greenland. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **8**. pp. 383-408.
- Humlum, O., (2000). The geomorphic significance of rock glaciers: Estimates of rock glacier debris volumes and headwall recession rates in West Greenland. *Geomorphology*. **35**. pp. 41-67.
- Humphries, D. W., (1972). Glaciology and glacial history. In: Downie, C. and Wilkinson, P. (eds). *The Geology of Kilimanjaro*. Department of Geology, University of Sheffield. pp. 31-71.

- Hurni, H., (1989). Late Quaternary of Simen and other mountains in Ethiopia. In: Mahaney, W. C., (ed). *Quaternary and Environmental Research on East African Mountains*. A.A. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 105-120.
- Hutchinson, J. N., (1970). A coastal mudflow on the London clay cliffs at Beltinge, North Kent. *Géotechnique*. **20**. pp. 412-438.
- Ildefonse, B., Launeau, P., Bouchez, J. L. and Fernandez, A., (1992). Effects of mechanical interactions on the development of shaped preferred orientations: a two-dimensional approach. *Journal of Structural Geology*. **14**. pp. 73-83.
- Illgner, P. M., (1995). *The morphology and sedimentology of two unconsolidated Quaternary Slope deposits in the Alexandria District, Cape Province*. MSc thesis (unpublished). Rhodes University, Grahamstown.
- Ikeda, A. and Matsuoka, N., (2006). Pebbly versus bouldery rock glaciers: Morphology, structure and processes. *Geomorphology*. **73**. pp. 279-296.
- Innes, J., (1983). Debris flows. *Progress in Physical Geography*. **7**. pp. 469-501.
- Inoue, J., (1977). Mass budget on Khumbu Glacier. *Seppyo*. **39**. (Special Issue). pp. 15-19.
- Iverson, R. M., (2004). Debris Flow. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 225.
- Ivy-Ochs, S., Schlüchter, C., Kubik, P. W. and Denton, G. H., (1999). Moraine exposure dates imply synchronous Younger Dryas glacier advances in European Alps and in the Southern Alps of New Zealand. *Geografiska Annaler*. **81A**. pp. 313-323.
- Jania, J., (2004). Ice. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 544-549.
- Jeffery, G. B., (1922). The motion of ellipsoidal particles immersed in a viscous fluid. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series A*. **102**. pp. 161-179.
- Jenny, H., (1941). *Factors of Soil Formation*. McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Jesek, J., Schulmann, K. and Seheth, K., (1996). Fabric evolution of rigid inclusions during mixed coaxial and simple shear flows. *Tectonophysics*. **257**. pp. 203-221.
- Johnson, A. M. and Rodine, J. R., (1984). Debris flow. In: Brunsten, D. and Prior, B. (eds). *Slope Instability*. John Wiley and Sons Ltd, Chichester. pp. 257-361.
- Johnson, P. G., (1983). Rock glaciers: a case for a change in nomenclature. *Geografiska Annaler*. **65A**. pp. 27-34.

- Johnson, W. H. and Menzies, J., (1996). Pleistocene supraglacial and ice-marginal deposits and landforms. In: Menzies, J. (ed). *Past Glacial Environments, Sediments, Forms and Techniques*. Butterworth-Heinemann Ltd, Oxford. pp. 137-160.
- Kakonge, J. O., (2002). Application of chaos theory to solving the problems of social and environmental decline in Lesotho. *Journal of Environmental Management*. **65**. pp. 63-78.
- Kaplan, M. R., Ackert, R. P., Jr., Singer, B. S., Douglass, D. C. and Kurz, M. D., (2004). Cosmogenic nuclide chronology of millennial-scale advances during O-isotope stage 2 in Patagonia. *Geological Society of America*. **116**. pp. 308-321.
- Kaser, G., (1999). A review of the modern fluctuations of tropical glaciers. *Global Planetary Change*. **22**. pp. 93-103.
- Kaser, G. and Osmaston, H. A., (2002). *Tropical Glaciers*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Kaser, G., Hardy, D. R., Mölg, T., Bradley, R. S. and Hyera, T. M., (2004). Modern glacier retreat on Kilimanjaro as evidence of climate change: Observations and facts. *International Journal of Climatology*. **24**. pp. 329-339.
- Kemp, R. A., (1985). *Soil Micromorphology and the Quaternary*. Quaternary Research Association Technical Guide No. 2, Cambridge.
- Kemp, R. A., (1989). Soil micromorphology as a technique for reconstructing palaeoenvironmental change. In: Singhvi, A. K. and Derbyshire, E., (eds). *Palaeoenvironmental Reconstruction in Arid Lands*. Oxford and IBH Publishing Co. PVT, New Delhi. pp. 41-71.
- Kiernan, K., (1990). The extent of the Late Cenozoic glaciation in the central highlands of Tasmania, Australia. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **22**. pp. 341-354.
- Kiernan, K., Fifield, K. and Chapell, J., (2004). Cosmogenic nuclide ages for Last Glacial Maximum moraine at Schnells Ridge, southwest Tasmania. *Quaternary Research*. **61**. pp. 335-338.
- Killick, D. J. B., (1963). An account of the plant ecology of the Cathedral Peak area of the Natal Drakensberg. *Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa*. Botanical Research Institute, Department of Agricultural Technical Services. **34**. pp. 1-178.

- Killick, D. J. B., (1976). African mountain heathlands. In: Specht, R. L. (ed). *Ecosystems of the World*. 9A. Heathlands and related shrubs-descriptive studies. Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company, Oxford. pp. 97-116.
- Killick, D. J. B., (1994). Drakensberg Alpine Region – Lesotho and South Africa. In: Davis, S. D. and Heywood, V. H., (eds). *Centres of Plant Diversity*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 257-260.
- King, L. C., (1953). Canons of landscape evolution. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America*. **64**. pp. 721-752.
- King, L. C., (1962): *Morphology of the Earth*. Oliver and Boyd, Edinburgh.
- King, L. C., (1982): *The Natal Monocline: Explaining the Origin and Scenery of Natal, South Africa* (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). Geology Department, University of Natal, Durban.
- Kinnard, C. and Lewkowicz, A. G., (2006). Frontal advance of turf-banked solifluction lobes, Kluane Range, Yukon Territory, Canada. *Geomorphology*. **73**. pp. 261-276.
- Kirkbride M. P., (2002). Processes of glacial transportation. In: Menzies, J., (ed). *Modern and Past Glacial Environments*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford. pp. 147-169.
- Kirkbride, M. P. and Spedding, N., (1996). The influence of englacial drainage on sediment-transport pathways and till texture of temperate valley glaciers. *Annals of Glaciology*. **22**. pp. 160-166.
- Kirkbride, M. P. and Mathews, D., (1997). The role of fluvial and glacial erosion in landscape evolution: the Ben Ohau Range, New Zealand. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **22**. pp. 317-327.
- Kirkbride, M. P. and Brazier, V. (1998). A critical evaluation of the use of glacier chronologies in climatic reconstruction, with reference to New Zealand. *Quaternary Proceedings*. **6**. pp 55-64.
- Kjær, K. and Krüger, J., (1998). Does clast size influence fabric strength? *Journal of Sedimentary Research*. **68**. pp. 746-749.
- Klein, A. G., Seltzer, G. O. and Isacks, B. L., (1999). Modern and last local glacial maximum snowlines in the Central Andes of Peru, Bolivia and Northern Chile. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **18**. pp. 63-84.

- Klug, J. R., De Villiers, J. M., Tainton, N. M. and Mantela, L. S., (1989). *Final Report of the Terrain Analysis Project for the Drakensberg/Maluti Mountain Catchment Conservation Programme*. Natal Parks Board, Pietermaritzburg.
- Knight, P. G., (2004). Moraine. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 691-694.
- Knighton, D., (1998). *Fluvial Forms and Processes*. Arnold, London.
- Konrad, J-M., (1999). Frost susceptibility related to soil index properties. *Canadian Geotechnical Journal*. **36**. pp. 403-417.
- Kosterov, A. A. and Perrin, M., (1996). Paleomagnetism of the Lesotho basalt, southern Africa. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*. **139**. pp. 63-78.
- Kotlyakov, V. M. and Krenke, A. N., (1979). The regime of the present-day glaciation of the Caucasus. *Zeitschrift für Gletscherkunde und Glazialgeologie*. **15**. pp. 7-21.
- Krainer, K. and Mostler, W., (2000). Reicherkar rock glacier: A glacier derived debris-ice-system in the western Stubai Alps, Austria. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **11**. pp. 267-275.
- Krüger, J. and Kjær, K. H., (1999). A data chart for field description and genetic interpretation of glacial diamicts and associated sediments – with examples from Greenland, Iceland and Denmark. *Boreas*. **28**. pp. 386-402.
- Krumbein, W. C., (1940). Flood gravel of San Gabriel Canyon. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **51**. pp. 636-676.
- Krumbein, W. C., (1942). Flood deposits of Arroyo Seco, Los Angeles County, California. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **53**. pp. 1355-1402.
- Kück, K. M. and Lewis, C. A., (2002). Terracettes and active gelifluction terraces in the Drakensberg of the province of the Eastern Cape, South Africa: a process study. *South African Geographical Journal*. **84**. pp. 214-225.
- Kuenen, Ph. H., (1956). Experimental abrasion of pebbles: 2. Rolling by current. *Journal of Geology*. **64**. pp. 336-368.
- Kuhn, M., (1981). Climate and glaciers. *Symposium on Sea Level, Ice and Climatic Change, Canberra 1979*. IAHS Publication 131, Great Yarmouth, UK. pp. 3-20.
- Kulkarni, A. V., (1992). Mass balance of Himalayan glaciers using AAR and ELA methods. *Journal of Glaciology*. **38**. pp. 101-104.
- Lachniet, M. S., Larson, G. J., Strasser, J. C., Lawson, D. E. and Evenson, E. B., (1999). Microstructures of glaciogenic sediment flow deposits, Matanuska glacier, Alaska. In: Mickelson, D. M. and Attig, J. W., (eds). *Glacial Processes Past and*

- Present*. Geological Society of America, Special Paper 337. Boulder, CO. pp. 45-57.
- Lachniet, M. S., Larson, G. J., Lawson, D. E., Evenson, E. B. and Alley, R. B., (2001). Microstructures of sediment flow deposits and subglacial sediments: a comparison. *Boreas*. **30**. pp. 254-262.
- Lamont, G. N., Chinn, T. J. and Fitzharris, B. B., (1999). Slopes of glacier ELA's in the Southern Alps in relation to atmospheric circulation patterns. *Global Planetary Change*. **22**. pp. 209-219.
- Lawson, D. E., (1979). A comparison of the pebble orientations in ice and deposits of the Matanuska glacier, Alaska. *Journal of Geology*. **87**. pp. 629-645.
- Lee, J. A. and Kemp, R. A., (1992). *Thin Sections of Unconsolidated Sediments and Soils: A Recipe*. Centre for Environmental Analysis and Management Technical Monograph 2, Royal Holloway, University of London.
- Leonard, E. M., (1989). Climatic change in the Colorado Rocky mountains: estimates based on modern climate at Late Pleistocene equilibrium lines. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **21**. pp. 245-255.
- Lewin, J. and Warburton, J., (1994). Debris flows in an alpine environment. *Geography*. **79**. pp. 98-107.
- Lewin, J. and Brewer, P. A., (2002). Laboratory simulation of clast abrasion. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **27**. pp. 145-164.
- Lewis, C. A., (1966). *The periglacial landforms of the Brecon Beacons*. PhD thesis (unpublished). University College, Dublin.
- Lewis, C. A., (1987). Periglacial features in southern Africa: a review. *Palaeoecology of Africa*. **19**. pp. 357-370.
- Lewis, C. A., (1988a). Periglacial features in southern Africa: a review. *Palaeoecology of Africa*. **19**. pp. 357-370.
- Lewis, C. A., (1988b). Periglacial landforms. In: Moon, B. P. and Dardis, G. F., (eds). *The Geomorphology of Southern Africa*. Southern Book Publishers, Johannesburg. pp. 103-119.
- Lewis, C. A., (1994a). *Field Guide to the Quaternary Glacial, Periglacial and Colluvial Features of the East Cape Drakensberg*. South African Society for Quaternary Research, Field Guide No 1.

- Lewis, C. A., (1994b). Protalus ramparts and the altitude of the local equilibrium line during the last glacial stage in Bokspruit, East Cape Drakensberg, South Africa. *Geografiska Annaler*. **76A**. pp. 37-48.
- Lewis, C. A., (1996). Periglacial features. In: Lewis, C. D., (ed). *The Geomorphology of the Eastern Cape, South Africa*. Grocott and Sherry, Grahamstown. pp. 103-119.
- Lewis, C. A., (2005). Late Glacial and Holocene Palaeoclimatology of the Drakensberg of the Eastern Cape, South Africa. *Quaternary International*. **129**. pp. 33-48.
- Lewis, C. A. and Hanvey, P. M., (1988). Sedimentology of debris slope accumulations at Rhodes, Eastern Cape Drakensberg, South Africa. In: Dardis, G. F. and Moon, B. P., (eds). *Geomorphological Studies in Southern Africa*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 365-381.
- Lewis, C. A. and Hanvey, P. M., (1993). The remains of rock glaciers in Bottleneck, East Cape Drakensberg, South Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*. **48**. pp. 265-289.
- Lewis, C. A. and Illgner, P. M., (1998). Fluvial conditions during the Holocene as evidenced by alluvial sediments from above Howson's Poort, near Grahamstown, South Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*. **53**. pp. 53-67.
- Lewis, C. A. and Illgner, P. M., (2001). Late Quaternary glaciation in Southern Africa: Moraine ridges and glacial deposits at Mount Enterprise in the Drakensberg of the Eastern Cape Province, South Africa. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **16**. pp. 365-374.
- Lewis, D. W., Laird, M. G. and Powell, R. D., (1980). Debris flow deposits of early Miocene age, Deadman Stream, Marlborough, New Zealand. *Sedimentary Geology*. **27**. pp. 83-118.
- Lie, Ø., Dahl, S. O. and Nesje, A., (2003). A theoretical approach to glacier equilibrium-line altitudes using meteorological data and glacier mass balance records from southern Norway. *The Holocene*. **13**. pp. 365-372.
- Linacre, E. and Geerts, B., (1997). *Climates and Weather Explained*. Routledge, London.
- Linder, H. P., (1990). On the relationship between the vegetation and floras of the Afromontane and the Cape regions of Africa. *Mitteilungen aus dem Institut für Allgemeine Botanik Hamburg*. **23**. pp. 777-790.

- Linder, L. and Marks, L., (1985). Types of debris slope accumulations and rock glaciers in South Spitsbergen. *Boreas*. **14**. pp. 139-153.
- Lindsay, J. F., (1968). The development of clast fabrics in mudflows. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **38**. pp. 1242-1253.
- Linton, D. L., (1969). Evidences of Pleistocene cryonival phenomena in South Africa. *Palaeoecology of Africa*. **5**. pp. 71-89.
- Lock, B. E., (1978). Ultrahigh-temperature volcanic mudflows amongst the Drakensberg volcanic rocks: new criteria for their recognition. *Transactions of the Geological Society of South Africa*. **81**. pp. 55-59.
- Lock, G. S. H., (1990). *The Growth and Decay of Ice*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Low, A. B. and Rebelo, A. G., (1996). *Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland*. Department of Environmental affairs and Tourism. Pretoria.
- Lowe, D. R., (1982). Sediment gravity flows: II. Depositional models with special reference to the deposits of high-density turbidity currents. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **52**. pp. 279-297.
- Lowe, J. J. and Walker, M. J. C., (1997). *Reconstructing Quaternary Environments*. Longman, Harlow.
- Lozinsky, W. von., (1912). Die periglaziale Fazies der mechanischen Verwitterung. *Comptes Rendus, XI Congrès Internationale Géologie, Stockholm 1910*. pp. 1039-1053.
- Lundén, B., Strömquist, L. and Nordström, K., (1990). An evaluation of soil erosion intensity mapping from SPOT satellite imagery by studies of colour air-photos and top-soil content of <sup>137</sup>Cesium. In: Strömquist, L., (ed). *Monitoring Soil Loss at Different Observation Levels. Case Studies of Soil Erosion in the Lesotho Lowlands*. UNGI Report. 74. Uppsala University. pp. 13-37.
- Lundqvist, G., (1949). The orientation of the block material in certain species of flow earth. *Geografiska Annaler*. **31**. pp. 335-347.
- MacKenzie, W. S., Donaldson, C. H. and Guilford, C., (1982). *Atlas of Igneous Rocks and Their Textures*. Longman Group, Harlow.
- Mahaney, W. C., (1985). Late glacial and Holocene paleoclimate of Mount Kenya, East Africa. *Zeitschrift für Gletscherkunde und Glazialgeologie*. **21**. pp. 203-211.
- Mahaney, W. C., (1987). Dating of a moraine on Mount Kenya: Discussion. *Geografiska Annaler*. **69A**. pp. 359-363.

- Mahaney, W. C., (1989). *Quaternary and Environmental Research on East African Mountains*. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- Mahaney, W. C., (1990). *Ice on the Equator: Quaternary Geology of Mount Kenya, East Africa*. Wm Caxton, Ellison Bay, Wisconsin.
- Mahaney, W. C., (2004). Quaternary glacial chronology of Mount Kenya massif. In: Ehlers, J. and Gibbard, P. L., (eds). *Quaternary Glaciations Extent and Chronology, Part III: South America, Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctic*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 227-231.
- Mahaney, W. C., Harmsen, R. and Spence, J. R., (1991). Glacial-interglacial cycles and development of the Afroalpine ecosystem on East African Mountains: I. Glacial and postglacial record and palaeoclimate of Mount Kenya. *Journal of African earth Sciences*. **12**. pp. 505-512.
- Mahaney, W. C., Milner, M. W., Sanmugadas, V. K., Bezada, M. and Hancock, R. G. V., (2000). Late Quaternary deglaciation and Neoglaciation of the Humboldt Massif, northern Venezuelan Andes. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie. Supplement Band*. **122**. pp. 209-226.
- Marake, M, Mokuku, C, Majoro, M. and Mokitimi, N. (1998). Global change and subsistence rangelands in southern Africa: Resource variability, access and use in relation to rural livelihoods and welfare. Task 0 Project Document. Roma, National University of Lesotho.
- Marden, C. J. and Clapperton, C. M. (1995). Fluctuations of the South Patagonia Icefield during the last glaciation and the Holocene. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **10**. pp. 197-210.
- Mark, D. M. (1973). Analysis of axial orientation data, including till fabrics. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **84**. pp. 1369-1374.
- Marker, M. E., (1986). Pleistocene evidence from the Eastern Cape, South Africa: the Amatola scree tongues. In: Gardiner, V., (ed). *Proceedings of the First International Geomorphology Conference*. **11**. pp. 901-313.
- Marker, M. E., (1990). Nivation evidence from a north-facing slope? Golden Gate, Eastern Orange Free State. *South African Geographical Journal*. **72**. pp. 15-18.
- Marker, M.E. (1991). The evidence for cirque glaciation in Lesotho. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **2**. pp. 21-30.

- Marker, M. E., (1992). Periglacial landforms of southern Africa compared with those of Colorado and New Mexico, USA. *South African Geographical Journal*. **74**. pp. 8-12.
- Marker, M. E., (1994a). Sedimentary sequences at Sani Top, Lesotho highlands, southern Africa. *The Holocene*. **4**. pp. 406-412.
- Marker, M. E., (1994b). Dating of valley fills at Golden Gate Highlands National Park. *South African Journal of Science*. **90**. pp. 361-363.
- Marker, M. E., (1995). Late Quaternary environmental implications from sedimentary sequences at two high altitude Lesotho sites. *South African Journal of Science*. **91**. pp. 294-298.
- Marker, M.E. and Whittington, G. (1971). Observations on some valley forms and deposits in the Sani Pass area, Lesotho. *South African Geographical Journal*. **53**. pp. 96-99.
- Markgraf, V. (1993). Younger Dryas in southernmost South America – An update. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **12**. pp. 351-355.
- Markgraf, V., Bradbury, J. P. and Fernandez, J., (1986). Bajada de Rahue, Province of Neuquén, Argentina: an interstadial deposit in northern Patagonia. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*. **56**. pp. 251-258.
- Markgraf, V., Dodson, J. R., Kershaw, A. P., McGlone, S. and Nicholls, N. (1992). Evolution of late Pleistocene and Holocene climates in the circum-South Pacific land areas. *Climate Dynamics*. **6**. pp. 193-211.
- Marriott, S. B., (2004). Floodplain. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 381-384.
- Marsh, J. S., (1987). Basalt geochemistry and tectonic discrimination within continental flood basalt provinces. *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research*. **32**. pp. 35-49.
- Maslanyj, M. P., Light, M. P. R., Greenwood, R. J. and Banks, N. L., (1992). Extension tectonics offshore Namibia and evidence for passive rifting in the South Atlantic. *Marine and Petroleum Geology*. **9**. pp. 156-174.
- Matsuoka, N., (2001). Solifluction rates, processes and landforms: A global review. *Earth Science Reviews*. **55**. pp. 107-134.
- Matsuoka, N., (2004). Solifluction. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 984-987.

- Matsuoka, N., (2005). Temporal and spatial variations in periglacial soil movements on alpine crest slopes. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **30**. pp. 41-58.
- Matsuoka, N., Ikeda, A. and Date, T., (2005). Morphometric analysis of solifluction lobes and rock glaciers. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **16**. pp. 99-113.
- Matthews, J. A., (1987). Regional variation in the composition of Neoglacial end moraines, Jotunheimen, Norway: an altitudinal gradient in clast roundness and its possible palaeoclimatic significance. *Boreas*. **16**. pp. 173-188.
- Matthews, J. A. and Petch, J. R., (1982). Within-valley asymmetry and related problems of Neoglacial lateral moraine development at certain Jotunheimen glaciers, southern Norway. *Boreas*. **11**. pp. 225-247.
- Matzinger, N., Andretta, M., Van Gorsel, E., Vogt, R., Ohmura, A. and Rotach, M. W., (2003). Surface radiation budget in an alpine valley. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*. **129**. pp. 877-895.
- McCarthy, P. J. and Plint, A. G., (1999). Floodplain palaeosols of the Cenomanian Dunvegan Formation, Alberta and British Columbia, Canada: Micromorphology, pedogenic processes and palaeoenvironmental implications. In: Marriott, S., Alexander, J. and Hey, R., (eds). *Floodplains: Interdisciplinary Approaches*. Geological Society London, Special Publication 163. pp. 289-310.
- McCulloch, R. D., Bentley, M. J., Purves, R. S., Hulton, N. R. J., Sugden, D. E. and Claperton, C. M., (2000). Climatic inferences from glacial and palaeoecological evidence at the last glacial termination, southern South America. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **15**. pp. 409-417.
- McEwen, L. J. and Matthews, J. A., (1998). Channel form, bed material and sediment sources of the Sprongdøla, southern Norway: evidence for a distinct periglacio-fluvial system. *Geografiska Annaler*. **80A**. pp. 17-36.
- McGlone, M. S., and Topping, W. W., (1977). Arunian (post glacial) pollen diagrams from the Tongariro region, North Island, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Botany*. **15**. pp. 749-760.
- McGlone, M. S. and Topping, W. W., (1983). Late Quaternary vegetation, Tongariro region, central North Island, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Botany*. **21**. pp. 53-76.
- McGlone, M. S., Salinger, M. J. and Moar, N. T., (1993). Paleovegetation studies of New Zealand's climate since the Last Glacial Maximum. In: Sutton, D. G., (ed).

- The Origins of the First New Zealanders*. Auckland University Press, Auckland. pp. 136-163.
- McManus, J., (1988). Grain size determination and interpretation. In: Tucker, M. E., (ed). *Techniques in Sedimentology*. Blackwell, Oxford. pp. 63-85.
- Meadows, M. E., (1988). Landforms and Quaternary climatic change. In: Moon, B. P. and Dardis, G. F. (eds) *The Geomorphology of Southern Africa*. Southern Book Publishers, Johannesburg. pp. 296-316.
- Meier, M. F. and Post, A. S., (1962). Recent variations in mass net budgets of glaciers in western North America. *International Association of Scientific Hydrology*. **58**. pp. 63-77.
- Menzies, J., (1998). Microstructures within subglacial diamictons. In: Kostrzewski, A., (ed). *Relief and Deposits of Present-day and Pleistocene Glaciation of the Northern Hemisphere – Selected Problems*. Adam Mickiewicz University Press, Geography Series no. 58. Poznań, Poland. pp. 153-166.
- Menzies, J., (2002a). Ice flow and hydrology. In: Menzies, J., (2002). (ed). *Modern and Past Glacial Environments*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford. pp. 79-130.
- Menzies, J., (2002b). Glaciers and Ice Sheets. In: Menzies, J., (2002). (ed). *Modern and Past Glacial Environments*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford. pp. 53-78.
- Menzies, J. and Maltman, A. J., (1992). Microstructures in diamictons-evidence for subglacial bed conditions. *Geomorphology*. **6**. pp. 27-40.
- Menzies, J. and Zaniewski, K., (2003). Microstructures within a modern debris flow deposit derived from Quaternary glacial diamicton – a comparative micromorphological study. *Sedimentary Geology*. **157**. pp. 31-48.
- Menzies, J., Zaniewski, K. and Dreger, D., (1997). Evidence from microstructures, of deformable bed conditions within drumlins, Chimney Bluffs, New York State. *Sedimentary Geology*. **111**. pp. 161-175.
- Mercer, J. H., (1972). Chilean glacial chronology 20 000- 11 000 carbon-14 years ago: some global comparisons. *Science*. **176**. pp. 1118-1120.
- Mercer, J. H., (1976). Glacial history of southernmost South America. *Quaternary Research*. **6**. pp. 125-166.
- Mercer, J. H., (1982). Holocene glacier variations in southern South America. *Striae*. **18**. pp. 35-40.
- Mercer, J. H., (1983). Cenozoic glaciation in the Southern Hemisphere. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences*. **11**. pp. 99-132.

- Mercer, J. H., (1984). Late Cenozoic glacial variations in South America south of the equator. In: Vogel, J. C., (ed). *Late Cainozoic Palaeoclimates of the Southern Hemisphere*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 45-58.
- Messerli, B., (1967). Die eiszeitliche und die gegenwärtige Vergletscherung im Mittelländischen Raum. *Geographica Helvetica*. **20**. pp. 105-187.
- Messerli, B. and Zurbuchen, M., (1968). Blockgletscher in Weissmies und Aletsch und ihre photogrammetrische Kartierung. *Die Alpen*. **44**. pp. 139-152.
- Messerli, B. and Winiger, M., (1992). Climate, environmental change and resources of the African mountains from the Mediterranean to the Equator. *Mountain Research and Development*. **12**. pp. 315-336.
- Messerli, B., Hurni, H., Kienholz, H. and Winiger, M., (1977). Bale Mountains, the largest Pleistocene mountain glacier system of Ethiopia. INQUA abstracts, Birmingham.
- Meyer, H., (1900). *Der Kilimandscharo*. Reimer-Vohden, Berlin.
- Meyer, H. W., (1992). Lapse rates and other variables applied to estimating paleoaltitudes from fossil floras. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology and Palaeoecology*. **99**. pp. 71-99.
- Millar, S. W. S., (2005). Fabric variability associated with periglacial mass-wasting at Eagle Summit, Alaska. *Geomorphology*. **72**. pp. 222-237.
- Mills, H. H. (1984)., Clast orientation in Mount St Helens debris flow deposits, North Fork Toutle River, Washington. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **54**. pp. 626-634.
- Mills, H. H., (1991). Three-dimensional clast orientation in glacial and mass-movement sediments. *US Geological Survey*. Open File Report 90-128. 71 pp.
- Mills, S. C. and Grab, S. W., (2005). Debris ridges along the southern Drakensberg escarpment as evidence for Quaternary glaciation in southern Africa. *Quaternary International*. **129**. pp. 61-73.
- Mitchell, A. A., Ramluckan, V. R., Dunlevey, J. N. and Eglington, B. M., (1996). The basalt stratigraphy of the Sani Pass, KwaZulu/Natal Drakensberg. *South African Journal of Geology*. **99**. pp. 251-262.
- Mitchell, W. A., (1996). Significance of snowblow in the generation of Loch Lomond Stadial (Younger Dryas) glaciers in the western Pennines, northern England. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **11**. pp. 233-248.

- Mitsch, W. J. and Gosselink, J. G., (1986). *Wetlands*. Van Nostrand Reinhold Co, New York.
- Moar, N. T., (1980). Late Otiran and early Aranuian grassland in central South Island. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*. **3**. pp. 4-12.
- Moon, B. P. and Partridge, T. C., (1993). Geomorphology in southern Africa. In: Walker, H. J. and Grabau, W. E., (eds). *The Evolution of Geomorphology*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 383-395.
- Mosenene, L., (1999). Soil-water conservation tillage practices in Lesotho: Experiences of SWACAP. In: Kaumbutho, P. G. and Simalenga, T. E., (eds). *Conservation Tillage with Animal Traction*. ATNESA. Harare, Zimbabwe.
- Mulder, N. and Grab, S. W. (2002). Remote sensing for snow cover analysis along the Drakensberg escarpment. *South African Journal of Science*. **98**. pp. 213-217.
- Murphy, C. P., (1986). *Thin Section Preparation of Soils and Sediments*. AB Academic Publishers, Berkhamstead.
- Murray, D. R. and Locke, W. W., (1989). Dynamics of the Late Pleistocene Big Timber Glacier, Crazy Mountains, Montana, U.S.A. *Journal of Glaciology*. **35**. pp. 183-190.
- Nanson, G. C. and Gibling, M., (2004). Channel, alluvial. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 133-139.
- Nel, W. and Sumner, P. D., (2005). First rainfall data from the KZN Drakensberg escarpment edge (2002 and 2003). *Water SA*. **31**. pp. 399-402.
- Nelson, F. E., (1985). A preliminary investigation of solifluction macrofabrics. *Catena*. **12**. pp. 23-33.
- Nemec, W. and Steel, R. J., (1984). Alluvial and coastal conglomerates: their significant features and some comments on gravely mass-flow deposits. In: Koster, E. H. and Steel, R. J., (eds). *Sedimentology of Gravels and Conglomerates*. Canadian Society of Petroleum Geology. Memoir 10. pp. 1-31.
- Nesje, A., (1992). Topographical effects on the equilibrium line altitude on glaciers. *Geojournal*. **27**. pp. 383-391.
- Nesje, A. and Dahl, S. O., (2000). *Glaciers and Environmental Change*. Arnold, London.
- Netterberg, F., (1980). Geology of South African calcretes: 1. Terminology, description, macrofeatures and classification. *Transactions of the Geological Society of South Africa*. **83**. pp. 255-283.

- Nicol, I. G., (1973). Landforms in the Little Caledon Valley, Orange Free State. *South African Journal of Science*. **55**. pp. 56-68.
- Nicolas, J. W., (1994). Fabric analysis of rock glacier debris mantles, La Sal Mountains, Utah. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 53-66.
- Nieuwenhuizen, M. E. & Van Steijn, H., (1990). Alpine debris flows and their sedimentary properties: A case study from the French Alps. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **1**. pp.111-128.
- Nixon, P. H., (1973). *Lesotho Kimberlites*. Lesotho National Development Corporation, Maseru.
- Nye, J. F., (1952). A method of calculating the thickness of the ice-sheets. *Nature*. **169**. pp. 529-530.
- Ohmura, A., Kasser, P. and Funk, M., (1992). Climate at the equilibrium line of glacier. *Journal of Glaciology*. **38**. pp. 397-411.
- Olivier Shand and LahMeyer MacDonald Consortium., (1986). *Lesotho Highlands water Project, Feasibility Study*. April 1986.
- Osmaston, H. A., (2004). Quaternary glaciations in the East African Mountains. In: Ehlers, J. and Gibbard, P. L., (eds). *Quaternary Glaciations Extent and Chronology, Part III: South America, Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctic*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 139-150.
- Osmaston, H. A., (2005). Estimates of glacier equilibrium line altitudes by the Area x Altitude, the Area x Altitude Balance Ratio and the Area x Altitude Balance Index methods and their validation. *Quaternary International*. **138-139**. pp. 22-31.
- Osmaston, H. A. and Harrison, S. P., (2005). The late Quaternary glaciation of Africa: A regional synthesis. *Quaternary International*. **138-139**. pp. 32-54.
- Osmaston, H. A., Mitchell, W. A. and Osmaston, J. A. N., (2005). Quaternary glaciation of the Bale Mountains, Ethiopia. *Journal of Quaternary Science*. **20**. pp. 593-606.
- Owen, L.A., (1991). Mass movement in the Karakoram Mountains: their sedimentary characteristics, recognition and role in Karakoram landform evolution. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **35**. pp. 401-424.
- Owen, L. A., (1994). Glacial and non-glacial diamictos in the Karakoram Mountains and western Himalayas. In: Warren, W. P. and Croot, D. G., (eds). *Formation and Deformation of Glacial Deposits*. Balkema, Rotterdam and Brookfield. pp. 9-28.

- Owen, L. A. and Derbyshire, E., (1989). The Karakoram glacial depositional system. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie. Supplement Band.* **76**. pp. 33-73.
- Owens, I., (2004). Avalanche, snow. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 41-44.
- Paige-Green, P., (1985). The development of a regional landslide susceptibility map for southern Africa. *Proceedings of the Annual Transportation Convention*. FB. Paper FB4, Pretoria.
- Palmer, H. C., Alloway, B. V. and Neall, V. E., (1991). Volcanic-debris avalanche deposits in New Zealand – lithofacies organisation in unconfined wet avalanche flows. In: Fisher, R. V. and Smith, G. A., (eds). *Sedimentation in Volcanic Settings*. Society of Economic Palaeontologists and Mineralogists, Special Publications. 45. pp. 89-98.
- Partridge, T. C., (1993). The evidence for Cainozoic aridification in southern Africa. *Quaternary International*. **17**. pp. 105-110.
- Partridge, T. C., (1997a). Evolution of landscapes. In: Cowling, R. M., Richardson, D. M. and Pierce, S., (eds). *Vegetation of Southern Africa*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. pp. 5-20.
- Partridge, T. C., (1997b). Cainozoic environmental change in southern Africa, with special emphasis on the last 200 000 years. *Progress in Physical Geography*. **21**. pp. 2-32.
- Partridge, T. C., (1998). Of diamonds, dinosaurs and diastrophism: 150 million years of landscape evolution in southern Africa. *South African Journal of Geology*. **101**. pp. 167-184.
- Partridge, T. C. and Maud, R. R., (1987). Geomorphic evolution of southern Africa since the Mesozoic. *South African Journal of Geology*. **90**. pp. 179-208.
- Partridge, T. C. and Scott, L., (2000). Lakes and pans. In: Partridge, T. C. and Maud, R. R., (eds). *The Cenozoic of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, New York. pp. 145-161.
- Partridge, T.C., Avery, D.M, Botha., G.A, Brink, J.S., Deacon, J., Herbert, R.S., Maud, R.R., Scholtz, A., Scott, C., Talma, A.S. & Vogel, J.C. (1990). Late Pleistocene and Holocene Climatic change in Southern Africa. *South African Journal of Science*. **86**. pp. 302-306.

- Partridge, T. C., DeMenocal, P. B., Lorentz, S. A., Paiker, M. J. and Vogel, J. C., (1997). Orbital forcing of climate over South Africa: a 200,000-year rainfall record from the Pretoria Saltpan. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **16**. pp. 1125-1133.
- Partridge, T. C, Scott, L. and Hamilton, J. E. (1999). Synthetic reconstructions of southern African environments during the Last Glacial Maximum (21-18kyr) and the Holocene Altithermal (8-6kyr). *Quaternary International*. **57/58**. pp. 207-214.
- Paterson, W. S. B., (1981). *The Physics of Glaciers* (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford.
- Paterson, W. S. B., (1994). *The Physics of Glaciers* (3<sup>rd</sup> Edition). Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford.
- Penk, W., (1953). *Morphological Analysis of Landforms – a Contribution to Physical Geology*. English translation by Czech, H. and Boswell, K. C. from the 1923 manuscript. Hafner, New York.
- Pepper, A. C., Schulmeister, J., Nobes, D. C. and Augustinus, P. C., (2004). Possible ENSO signals prior to the Last Glacial Maximum during deglaciation and the early Holocene from New Zealand. *Geophysical Research Letters*. **31**. L15206.
- Pérez, F. L., (1988). Debris transport over a snow surface: A field experiment. *Revue de Géomorphologie Dynamique*. **37**. pp. 81-101.
- Perez-Arlucea, M. and Smith, N. D., (1999). Depositional patterns following the 1870's avulsion of the Saskatchewan River (Cumberland Marshes, Saskatchewan). *Journal of Sedimentary Research*. **69**. pp. 62-73.
- Peterson, J. A. and Robinson, G., (1969). Trend surface mapping of cirque floor levels. *Nature*. **222**. pp. 75-76.
- Phillips, C. J. and Davies, T. R. H., (1991). Determining rheological parameters of debris flow material. *Geomorphology*. **4**. pp. 101-110.
- Pidwirny, M., (2006). Energy and Matter. Physical Geography.net: Fundamentals of Physical Geography. [<http://www.physicalgeography.net/fundamentals>].
- Pierson, T. C. and Costa, J. E., (1987). A rheologic classification of subaerial sediment-water flows. In: Costa, J. E. and Wieczorek, G. F. (eds). *Debris Flow/Avalanches: Process, Recognition and Mitigation*. Reviews in Engineering Geology Volume VII, Boulder, CO. Geological Society of America. pp. 1-12.
- Pillans, R. B., McGlone, M. S., Palmer, A., Mildenhall, D., Alloway, B. and Berger, G., (1993). The Last Glacial Maximum in central and southern North Island, central New Zealand: A palaeoenvironmental reconstruction using the Kawakawa

- Tephra Formation as a chronostratigraphic marker. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*. **101**. pp. 283-304.
- Porter, S. C., (1975). Equilibrium line altitudes of late Quaternary glaciers in the Southern Alps, New Zealand. *Quaternary Research*. **5**. pp. 27-47.
- Porter, S. C., (1981a). Pleistocene glaciation in the southern Lake District of Chile. *Quaternary Research*. **16**. pp. 263-292.
- Porter, S. C., (1981b). Glaciological evidence of Holocene climatic change. In Wigley, T. M. L., Ingram, M. J. and Farmer, G. (eds). *Climate and History*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. pp. 82-110.
- Porter, S. C., (2001). Snowline depression in the tropics during the last glaciation. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **20**. pp. 1067-1091.
- Potter, E. C., (1976). Pleistocene glaciation in Ethiopia: new evidence. *Journal of Glaciology*. **17**. pp. 148-150.
- Potter, N. Jr., (1972). Ice-cored rock glacier, Galena Creek, Northern Absaroka Mountains, Wyoming. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America*. **83**. pp. 3025-3068.
- Powers, M. C., (1953). A new roundness scale for sedimentary particles. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **23**. pp. 117-119.
- Prell, W. L., Huston, W. H. and Williams, D. F., (1979). The subtropical convergence and the late Quaternary circulation in the Southern Indian Ocean. *Marine Micropalaeontology*. **4**. pp. 225-234.
- Preston-Whyte, R. A., (1971). Diurnal wind variations over the Drakensberg escarpment at Sani Pass. *South African Geographical Journal*. **53**. pp. 89-92.
- Preston-Whyte, R. A. and Tyson, P. D. (1988). *The Atmosphere and Weather of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town.
- Preusser, F., Andersen, B. G., Denton, G. H. and Schlüchter, C., (2005). Luminescence chronology of Late Pleistocene glacial deposits in North Westland, New Zealand. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **24**. pp. 2207-2227.
- Price, L. W., (1969). The collapse of solifluction lobes as a factor in vegetating blockfields. *Arctic*. **22**. pp. 395-402.
- Prick, A., (2004). Frost and frost weathering. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 412-415.

- Raab, T. and Völkel, J., (2003). Late Pleistocene glaciation of the Kleiner Arbersee area in the Bavarian Forest, south Germany. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **22**. pp. 581-593.
- Rabassa, J. and Clapperton, C. M., (1990). Quaternary glaciations of the southern Andes. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **9**. pp. 153-174.
- Rabassa, J., Rubulis, S. and Suárez, J., (1979). Rate of formation and sedimentology of (1976-1978) push moraines, Frias Glacier, Mount Tronador (41° 10'S; 71° 53'W), Argentina. In: Schlüchter, C., (ed). *Moraines and Varves*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 65-79.
- Rapp, A. and Nyberg, R. (1981). Alpine debris flows in northern Scandinavia. *Geografiska Annaler*. **63A**. pp. 183-196.
- Rea, B. R., Whalley, W. B., Evans, D. J., Gordon, J. E. and Mc Dougall, D. A., (1998). Plateau icefields: Geomorphology and dynamics. In: Owen, L. A. (ed). *Mountain glaciation. Quaternary Proceedings*. **6**. pp. 35-54.
- Rodda, J. C., (1967). The rainfall measurement problem. Preprints, *Conference on Geochemistry, Precipitation, Evaporation, Soil-moisture, Hydrometry*. Bern, Switzerland, AIHS. pp. 215-231.
- Romanovsky, V. E. and Osterkamp, T. E., (1995). Interannual variations of the thermal regime of the active layer and near-surface permafrost in northern Alaska. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **6**. pp. 313-335.
- Rose, J. (1974). Small-scale spatial variability of some sedimentary properties of lodgement till and slumped till. *Proceedings of the Geological Society of Glasgow*. **122-123**. pp. 12-28.
- Rosqvist, G., (1990). Quaternary glaciations in Africa. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **9**. pp. 281-297.
- Rowntree, K., (2000). Geography of drainage basins: hydrology, geomorphology, and ecosystem management. In: Fox, R. and Rowntree, K., (eds). *The Geography of South Africa in a Changing World*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 390-415.
- Sailer, R., Kerschner, H. and Heller, A., (1999). Three-dimensional reconstruction of Younger Dryas glaciers with a raster-based GIS. *Glacial Geology and Geomorphology*.  
[<http://boris.qub.ac.uk/ggg/papers/full/1999/rp011999/rp01.html>].

- Salinger, M. J., (1984). New Zealand climate: The last 5 million years. In: Vogel, J. C., (ed). *Late Cainozoic Palaeoclimates of the Southern Hemisphere*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 131-150.
- Salter, R. T., Crippen, T. F. and Noble, K. E., (1981). *Storm Damage Assessment of Thames-Te Aroha Area Following the Storm of April 1981: Final Report*. Water and Soil Science Centre, Aokautere, N.Z. Ministry of Works and Development, Internal Report.
- Sambrook Smith, G. H., Nicolas, A. P. and Ferguson, R. I., (1997). Measuring and defining bimodal sediments: problems and implications. *Water Resources Research*. **33**, pp. 1179-1185.
- Sänger, H., (1988). Recent periglacial morphodynamics and Pleistocene glaciation of the Western Cape folded belt, South Africa. In: Dardis, G. F. and Moon, B. P. *Geomorphological Studies in Southern Africa*. Balkema. Rotterdam. pp. 383-388.
- Sarracino, R. and Prasad, G., (1988). Spheroidal weathering in the Lesotho Formation Basalts. In: Dardis, G. F. and Moon, B. P., (eds). *Geomorphological Studies in Southern Africa*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 321-333.
- Schlee, J. S., (1957). Fluvial gravel fabrics. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology*. **27**, pp. 162-176.
- Schmitz, G. and Rooyani, F., (1987). *Lesotho Geology, Geomorphology, Soils*. National University of Lesotho.
- Schneider, J-L. and Fisher, R. V., (1998). Transport and emplacement mechanisms of large volcanic debris avalanches: Evidence from the northwest sector of Cantal Volcano (France). *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research*. **83**, pp. 141-165.
- Schneider, J-L., Wassmer, P. and Ledésert, B., (1999). La fabrique interne des depots du sturzström de Flims (Alpes Suisses): caractéristiques et implications sur les mécanismes de transport. *Earth and Planetary Sciences*. **328**, pp. 607-613.
- Scrott, L., Dikau, R. and Brunnsden, D., (1996). Soil flow (mudflow). In: Dikau, R., Brunnsden, D., Schrott, L. and Ibsen, M.-L., (eds). *Landslide Recognition. Identification, Movement and Causes*. John Wiley and Sons, Chichester. pp. 181-187.
- Schulze, B. R., (1965). *Climate of South Africa*. Part 8. General Survey. SA Weather Bureau report 28. Pretoria, Government Printer.

- Schulze, R. E., (1979). *Hydrology and Water Resources of the Drakensberg*. Natal Town and Regional Planning Reports, 42. University of Natal, Pietermaritzburg.
- Schulze, R. E., (1997). Climate. In: Cowling, R. M., Richardson, D. M. and Pierce, S. M., (eds). *Vegetation of Southern Africa*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. pp. 21-42.
- Schumm, S. A. and Stevens, M. A., (1973). Abrasion in place: a mechanism for rounding and size reduction of coarse sediments in rivers. *Geology*. **1**. pp. 37-40.
- Schytt, V., (1967). A study of 'ablation gradient'. *Geografiska Annaler*. **49A**. pp. 327-332.
- Scott, K. M., (1971). Origin and sedimentology of the 1969 debris flows near Glendora, California. *U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper*. **750-C**. pp. 242-247.
- Scott, L. (1982). A late Quaternary pollen record from the Transvaal bushveld, South Africa. *Quaternary Research*. **17**. pp. 339-370.
- Scott, L. (1999). The vegetation history and climate in the Savannah Biome, South Africa since 190 000 ka: A comparison of pollen data from the Tswaing Crater (the Pretoria saltpan) and Wonderkrater. *Quaternary International*. **57**. pp. 215-223.
- Selby, M. J., (1982). *Hillslope Materials and Processes* (1<sup>st</sup> Edition). Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Selby, M. J., (1993). *Hillslope Materials and Processes* (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Sene, K. J., Jones, D. A., Meigh, J. R. and Farquharson, F. A. K., (1998). Rainfall and flow variations in the Lesotho highlands. *International Journal of Climatology*. **18**. pp. 329-345.
- Shakesby, R. A., (1997). Pronival (protalus) ramparts: A review of forms, processes, diagnostic criteria and palaeoenvironmental implications. *Progress in Physical Geography*. **21**. pp. 394-418.
- Shakesby, R. A., (2004). Protalus Rampart. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 815-816.
- Shakesby, R. A. and Matthews, J. A., (1993). Loch Lomond Stadial glacier at Fan Hir, Mynydd Du (Brecon Beacons), South Wales: critical evidence and palaeoclimatic implications. *Geological Journal*. **28**. pp. 69-79.

- Shakesby, R. A., Dawson, A. G. and Matthews, J. A., (1987). Rock glaciers, protalus ramparts and related phenomena, Ronedale, Norway: a continuum of large-scale talus-derived landforms. *Boreas*. **16**. pp. 305-317.
- Shakesby, R. A., Dawson, A. G. and Matthews, J. A., (1989). Continuum and age: comments. *Boreas*. **18**. pp. 84-85.
- Shakesby, R. A., Matthews, J. A. and McCarroll, D., (1995). Pronival ("Protalus") Ramparts in the Romsdalsalpane, southern Norway: Forms, Terms, Subnival processes and alternative mechanisms of formation. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **27**. pp. 271-282.
- Shakesby, R. A., Matthews, J. A., McEwen, L. J. and Berrisford, M. S., (1999). Snow-push processes in Pronival (protalus) rampart formation: Geomorphological evidence from Smørbotn, Romsdalsalpane, southern Norway. *Geografiska Annaler*. **81A**. pp. 31-45.
- Shanahan, T. M. and Zreda, M., (2000). Chronology of Quaternary glaciations in East Africa. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*. **177**. pp. 23-42.
- Sharp, M., (1984). Annual moraine ridges at Skálafellsjökull, South-east Iceland. *Journal of Glaciology*. **30**. pp. 82-93.
- Shroder, Jr, J. F., (1987). Rock glaciers and slope failure: High plateaus and La Sal mountains Colorado Plateau, Utah, U.S.A. In: Giardino, J. R., Shroder, J. F. and Vitek, J. D., (eds). *Rock Glaciers*. Allen and Unwin, Boston. pp. 193-238.
- Shulmeister, J., Fink, D. and Augustinus, P. C., (2005). A cosmogenic nuclide chronology of the last glacial transition in North-West Nelson, New Zealand – new insights in Southern Hemisphere climate forcing during the last deglaciation. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*. **233**. pp. 455-466.
- Singer, B. S., Ackert, R. P., Jr. and Guillou, H., (2004).  $^{40}\text{Ar}/^{39}\text{Ar}$  and K-Ar chronology of Pleistocene glaciations in Patagonia. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **116**. pp. 434-450.
- Sissons, J. B., (1976). A remarkable protalus rampart in Wester Ross. *Scottish Geographical Magazine*. **92**. pp. 182-90.
- Sissons, J. B., (1979). Palaeoclimatic inferences from former glaciers in Scotland and the Lake District. *Nature*. **278**. pp. 518-521.
- Sissons, J. B., (1980a). The Loch Lomond Advance in the Lake District, northern England. *Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh (Earth Sciences)*. **71**. pp. 13-27.

- Sissons, J. B., (1980b). Palaeoclimatic inferences from Loch Lomond Advance glaciers. In: Lowe, J. J., Gray, J. M. and Robinson, J. E., (eds). *Studies in the Late glacial of Northwest Europe*. Pergamon Press, Oxford. pp. 31-43.
- Sissons, J. B. and Sutherland, D. G., (1976). Climatic inferences from former glaciers in the south-east Grampian Highlands. *Journal of Glaciology*. **17**. pp. 325-346.
- Small, R. J., (1983). Lateral moraines of Glacier de Tsidjiore Nouve: Form, development and implications. *Journal of Glaciology*. **29**. pp. 250-259.
- Small, R. J., (1987). Moraine sediment budgets. In: Gurnell, A. M. and Clark, M. J., (eds). *An Alpine Perspective*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 165-197.
- Smit, P., (1967). A geographical study. In: Smit, P., Leistner, G. M. E, Van Wyk, A. J. and Van der Merwe, E. J., (1969). *Lesotho*. The Africa Institute, Pretoria.
- Smith, G. A., (1986). Coarse-grained nonmarine volcanoclastic sediment: terminology and depositional process. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*. **97**. pp. 1-10.
- Smith, G. A. and Lowe, D. R., (1991). Lahars: volcano-hydrologic events and deposition in the debris flow-hyperconcentrated flow continuum. In: Fisher, R. V. and Smith, G. A., (eds). *Sedimentation in Volcanic Settings*. Society of Economic Palaeontologists and Mineralogists, Special Publications. 45. pp. 99-106.
- Smith, H. T. U., (1973). Photogeologic study of periglacial talus glaciers in northwestern Canada. *Geografiska Annaler*. **55A**. pp. 69-84.
- Smith, R. M. H., Eriksson, P. G. and Botha, W. J., (1993). A review of the stratigraphy and sedimentary environments of the Karoo-aged basins of southern Africa. *Journal of African Earth Sciences*. **16**. pp. 143-169.
- Sneed, E. D. & Folk, R. L., (1958). Pebbles in the lower Colorado River, Texas, a study in particle Morphogenesis. *The Journal of Geology*. **66**. pp. 114-50.
- South Africa 1:50 000 Sheet., (1986). 2929AD Giants Castle.
- South Africa 1:50 000 Sheet., (1986). 2929CA (48) Manamaneng.
- South Africa 1:50 000 Sheet., (1986). 2929CB Sani Pass.
- South Africa 1:50 000 Sheet., (1986). 2929CA Sani Pass (West).
- Sparrow, G. W. A. (1967a). Southern African cirques and arêtes. *Journal for Geography*. **2**. pp. 9-11.
- Sparrow, G. W. A., (1967b). Pleistocene periglacial topography in southern Africa. *Journal of Glaciology*. **6**. pp. 551-559.
- Spence, J. E., (1968). *Lesotho. The Politics of Defence*. Institute of race relations, London.

- STATISTICA., (2003). Basic statistics. [[www.statsoft.com/textbook/stbasic.html#t-testc](http://www.statsoft.com/textbook/stbasic.html#t-testc)].
- Steig, E. J., Morse, D. L., Waddington, E. D., Stuiver, M., Grootes, P. M., Mayewski, P. A., Twickler, M.S. and Whitlow, S. I., (2000). Wisconsin and Holocene climate history from an ice core at Taylor Dome, Western Ross Embayment, Antarctica. *Geografiska Annaler*. **82A**. pp. 213-235.
- Stoops, G., (2003). *Guidelines for Analysis and Description of Soil and Regolith Thin Sections*. Soil Science Society of America, Inc. Madison, USA.
- Stoops, G. and Jongerius, A., (1975). Proposals for a micromorphological classification of soil materials. I. A classification of related distributions of fine and coarse particles. *Geoderma*. **19**. pp. 189-199.
- Street, F. A., (1979). *Late Quaternary Lakes in the Ziway-Shala Basin, Southern Ethiopia*. PhD thesis (unpublished). University of Cambridge.
- Strömquist, L., (1991). Monitoring soil loss at different observation levels. Case studies of soil erosion in the Lesotho lowlands. UNGI Report Nr 74. Uppsala University.
- Stute, M. and Talma, A. S., (1997). Glacial temperatures and moisture transport regimes reconstructed from noble gases and  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  Stampriet aquifer, Namibia. *Proceedings of International Symposium on Isotope Techniques in the Study of Past and Current Environmental Changes in the Hydrosphere and Atmosphere*. Vienna International Atomic Agency.
- Stute, M. and Talma, A. S., (1998). Glacial temperatures and moisture transport regimes reconstructed from noble gases and  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  Stampriet aquifer, Namibia. *Isotope techniques in the study of environmental change: Proceedings of a symposium in Vienna, 14-18 April 1997*. IAEA, Vienna. pp. 307-318.
- Suggate, R. P., (1965). Late Pleistocene geology of the northern part of South Island, New Zealand. *New Zealand Geological Survey Bulletin*. **77**.
- Summerfield, M. A., (1991). *Global Geomorphology*. Pearson Education Limited, Harlow.
- Sumner, P. D., (1993). A landslide complex near Sani Pass, Natal Drakensberg, South Africa. *GeoÖkoDynamik*. **14**. pp. 93-103.
- Sumner, P. D., (1994). Mass movements in the Little 'Berg'. In: Beckendahl, H., Botha, G., Day, K., Grab, S., Meiklejohn, C., Meiklejohn, I. and Sumner, P., (eds). *Field Guide to the Greater Pietermaritzburg and Sani Pass (Natal Drakensberg)*

- Areas*. Field Guide to the mid-conference excursions of the Southern African Association of Geomorphologists Biennial Conference, Pietermaritzburg, 23<sup>rd</sup> – 27<sup>th</sup> January, 1994. pp. 27-28.
- Sumner, P. D., (1995). Cutbacks in the Natal Drakensberg Escarpment: comments on an hypothesis on their origin. *South African Journal of Science*. **91**. pp. 285-286.
- Sumner, P., (2000a). Relict sorted ground near Sani Pass – evidence for Pleistocene deep freeze. *Programme and Abstracts, Southern African Association of Geomorphologists 6<sup>th</sup> Biennial Conference*. Hammanskraal, 9<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> July, 2000.
- Sumner, P., (2000b). Landscape evolution in a changing environment. In: Fox, R. and Rowntree, K., (eds). *The Geography of South Africa in a Changing World*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 304-325.
- Sumner, P., (2003). A contemporary winter ground thermal profile in the Lesotho Highlands and implications for active and relict soil frost phenomena. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **28**. pp. 1451-1458.
- Sumner, P., (2004a). Relict sorted patterned ground in Lesotho. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **15**. pp. 89-93.
- Sumner, P., (2004b). Comment on ‘Characteristics and palaeoenvironmental significance of relict sorted patterned ground, Drakensberg plateau, southern Africa’ by S. W. Grab. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **23**. pp. 1201-1203.
- Sumner, P., (2004c). Geomorphic and climatic implications of relict openwork block accumulations near Thabana-Ntlenyana, Lesotho. *Geografiska Annaler*. **86A**. pp. 289-302.
- Sumner, P., (2004d). Short communication. Relict sorted patterned ground in Lesotho. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **15**. pp. 89-93.
- Sumner, P. and Meiklejohn, K. I., (2000). Landscape evolution in a changing environment. In: Fox, R. and Rowntree, K., (eds). *The Geography of South Africa in a Changing World*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town. pp. 304-325.
- Sumner, P. D. and de Villiers, S., (2002). On the Pleistocene palaeoenvironmental evidence from the Amatola screes. *South African Journal of Science*. **98**. pp. 598-601.
- Šúri, M. and Hofierka, J., (2004). A new GIS-based solar radiation model and its application to photovoltaic assessments. *Transactions in GIS*. **8**. pp. 175-190.

- Sutherland, D. G., (1984). Modern glacier characteristics as a basis for inferring former climates with particular reference to the Loch Lomond Stadial. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **3**. pp. 291-309.
- Takahashi, T., (1978). Mechanical characteristics of debris flow. *Journal of the Hydraulics Division, American Society of Civil Engineers*. **104**. pp. 1153-1169.
- Takahashi, T., (1991). *Debris Flow*. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- Taljaard, J. J., (1985). Cut-off lows in the South African region. South Africa Weather Bureau Technical Paper 14. SAWB, Pretoria.
- Taljaard, J. J., (1986). Change of rainfall distribution and circulation patterns over southern Africa in summer. *International Journal of Climatology*. **6**. pp 579-592.
- Talma, A. S. and Vogel, J. C. (1992). Late Quaternary palaeotemperatures derived from a speleothem from Cango Caves, Cape Province, South Africa. *Quaternary Research*. **37**. pp. 17-35.
- Talma, A. S. and Vogel, J. C. (1993). A simplified approach to calibrating  $^{14}\text{C}$  dates. *Radiocarbon*. **35**. pp. 317-322.
- Talma, A. S., Vogel, J. C. and Partridge, T. C., (1974). Isotopic contents of some Transvaal speleothems and their palaeoclimatic significance. *South African Journal of Science*. **70**. pp. 135-140.
- Taylor, G. I., (1923). The motion of ellipsoidal particles in a viscous fluid. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series A*. **103**. pp. 58-61.
- Ten Brinke, W. B. M., Schoor, M. M., Sorber, A. M. and Berendsen, H. J. A., (1998). Overbank sand deposition in relation to transport volumes during large magnitude floods in the Dutch sand-bed Rhine River. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **23**. pp. 809-824.
- Thomas, E. J., Von Veh, M. W. and McCourt, S., (1993). The tectonic evolution of southern Africa: an overview. *Journal of African Earth Sciences*. **16**. pp. 5-24.
- Thompson, L. G., Mosley-Thompson, E., Davis, M. E., Lin, P.-N., Henderson, K. A., Cole-Dai, J., Bolzan, J. F. and Liu, K.-b., (1995). Late glacial stage and Holocene tropical ice core records from Huascaran, Peru. *Science*. **269**. pp. 46-50.
- Thompson, L. G., Mosley-Thompson, E., Davis, M. E., Henderson, K. A., Brecher, H. H., Zagorodnov, V. S., Mashiotta, T. A., Lin, P.-N., Mikhalevko, V. N., Hardy, D. R. and Beer, J., (2002). Kilimanjaro ice core records: evidence of Holocene climate change in tropical Africa. *Science*. **298**. pp. 589-593.

- Thorn, C. E., (1992). Periglacial geomorphology: What? Where? When? In: Dixon, J. C. and Abrahams, A. D., (eds). *Periglacial Geomorphology*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 1-30.
- Tinkler, K. J. and Pengelly, J. W., (1994). Protalus ramparts and related features along the Niagara Escarpment, Niagara Peninsula, Ontario. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **5**. pp. 171-184.
- Ton-That, T., Singer, B., Mörner, N. and Rabassa, J., (1999). Datación de lavas basálticas por  $^{40}\text{Ar}/^{39}\text{Ar}$  y geología glacial de la region del Lago Buenos Aires. *Revista de la Asociación Geológica Argentina*. **54**. pp. 333-352.
- Torsnes, I., Rye, N. and Nesje, A., (1993). Modern and Little Ice Age equilibrium-line altitudes on outlet valley glaciers from Jostedalsbreen, western Norway: An evaluation of different approaches to their calculation. *Arctic and Alpine Research*. **25**. pp. 106-116.
- Tuniz, C., Bird, J. R., Fink, D. and Herzog, G. F., (1998). *Accelerator Mass Spectrometry: Ultrasensitive Analysis for Global Science*. CRC Press, Florida.
- Turney, C. S. M., McGlone, M. S. and Wilmshurst, J. M., (2003). Asynchronous climate change between New Zealand and the North Atlantic during the last deglaciation. *Geology*. **31**. pp. 223-226.
- Tushinsky, G. K., (1975). The part avalanches play in the formation and dynamics of mountain glaciers and snow patches in the territory of the USSR. *International Association of Hydrological Sciences Publications*. **104**. pp. 381-389.
- Tyson, P. D. (1986). *Climatic Change and Variability in Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Cape Town.
- Tyson, P. D. (1999). Late-Quaternary and Holocene palaeoclimates of southern Africa: A synthesis. *African Journal of Geology*. **102**. pp. 335-349.
- Tyson, P.D. and Partridge, T.C. (2000). Evolution of Cenozoic Climates. In: Partridge, T.C. and Maud, R.R. (eds), *The Cenozoic of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 371-387.
- Tyson, P. D. and Preston-Whyte, R. A., (2000). *The Weather and Climate of Southern Africa*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Tyson, P. D., Preston-Whyte, R. A. and Schulze, R. E., (1976). *The Climate of the Drakensberg*. Natal Town and Regional Planning Reports. **31**. The Natal Town and Regional Planning Commission, Pietermaritzburg.

- Tyson, P. D., Garstang, M., Swap, R., Kållberg, P. and Edwards, M., (1996). An air transport climatology for subtropical southern Africa. *International Journal of Climatology*. **16**. pp. 265-291.
- Udden, J.A., (1914). Mechanical composition of clastic sediments. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America*. **25**. pp.655-744.
- Umer, M. Kebede, S. and Osmaston, H., (2004). Quaternary glacial activity on the Ethiopian Mountains. In: Ehlers, J. and Gibbard, P. L., (eds). *Developments in Quaternary Science 2, Quaternary Glaciations-Extent and Chronology, Part III*. Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 171-174.
- Unwin, D. J., (1975). The nature and origin of the corrie moraines of Snowdonia. *Cambria*. **2**. pp. 20-33.
- UT Library online (1995). South Africa Province Map. [<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/south-africa.html>].
- Van Asch, Th. W. J., Buma, J. and Van Beek, L. P. H., (1999). A view on some hydrological triggering systems in landslides. *Geomorphology*. **30**. pp. 25-32.
- Vandergoes, M. J. and Fitzsimons, S. J., (2003). The Last Glacial-Interglacial Transition (LGIT) in south Westland, New Zealand: Paleoecological insight into mid-latitude Southern Hemisphere climate change. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **22**. pp. 1461-1476.
- Van der Beek, P., Summerfield, M. A., Braun, J., Brown, R. W. and Fleming, A., (2002). Modeling postbreakup landscape development and denudational history across the southeast African (Drakensberg escarpment) margin. *Journal of Geophysical Research*. **107**. 2351, doi:10.1029/2001JB000744.
- Van der Meer, J. J. M., (1987). Micromorphology of glacial sediments as a tool in distinguishing genetic varieties of till. *Geological Survey of Finland. Special Paper*. **3**. pp. 77-89.
- Van der Meer, J. J. M., (1993). Microscopic evidence of subglacial deformation. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **12**. pp. 553-587.
- Van der Meer, J. J. M., (1997a). Short-lived streamlined bedforms (annual small flutes) formed under clean ice, Turtmann Glacier, Switzerland. *Sedimentary Geology*. **111**. pp. 107-118.
- Van der Meer, J. J. M., (1997b). Particle and aggregate mobility in till: Microscopic evidence of subglacial processes. *Quaternary Science Reviews*. **16**. pp. 827-831.

- Van der Veen, C. J., (1999). *Fundamentals of Glacier Dynamics*. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- Van der Wateren, F. M., (2002). Processes of glaciotectonism. In: Menzies, J., (ed). *Modern and Past Glacial Environments*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford. pp. 417-443
- Van Rheede van Oudtshoorn, P. W., (1988). Sediment properties as a factor in soil erosion. In: Dardis, G. F. and Moon, B. P., (eds). *Geomorphological Studies in Southern Africa*. Balkema, Rotterdam. pp. 277-280.
- Van Rooy, J. L. and Van Schalkwyk, A., (1993). The geology of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project with special reference to the durability of construction materials. *Journal of African Earth Sciences*. **16**. pp. 181-192.
- Van Steijn, H. and Coutard, J. P., (1989). Laboratory experiments with small debris flows: physical properties related to sedimentary characteristics. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. **14**. pp. 587-596.
- Van Vliet-Lanoë, B., (1976). Traces de segregation de glace en lentilles associées aux sols et aux phénomènes périglaciaires fossils. *Biuletyn Periglacially*. **26**. pp. 41-55.
- Van Vliet-Lanoë, B., (1985a). Frost effect in soils. In: Boardman, J., (ed). *Soils and Quaternary Landscape Evolution*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 117-158.
- Van Vliet-Lanoë, B., (1985b). From frost creep to gelifluction: a new approach based on micromorphology, its application to Arctic environment. *Inter-Nord*. **17**. pp. 15-20.
- Van Vliet-Lanoë, B., (1987). Cryoreptation, gelifluxion et coulées boueuses: une dynamique continue en relation avec le drainage et la stabilité cryogénique. In: Pésci, M. and French, H. M., (eds). *Loess and Periglacial Phenomena*. Akadémiai Kiadó, Budapest. pp. 203-226.
- Van Zinderen Bakker, E. M., (1982). African palaeoenvironments 18 000 yrs B.P. *Palaeoecology of Africa*. **15**. pp. 77-99.
- Van Zinderen Bakker, E. M. and Werger, M. J. A., (1974). Environment, vegetation and phytogeography of the high altitude bogs of Lesotho. *Vegetatio*. **29**. pp. 37-49.
- Vere, D. M. and Matthews, J. A., (1985). Rock glacier formation from a lateral moraine at Bukkeholsbreen, Jotunheimen, Norway: a sedimentological approach. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*. **29**. pp. 397-415.

- Vere, D. M. and Benn, D. I., (1989). Structure and debris characteristics of medial moraines in Jotunheimen, Norway: implications for moraine classification. *Journal of Glaciology*. **35**. pp. 276-280.
- Vick, S. G., (1987). Significance of landsliding in rock glacier formation and movement. In: Giardino, J. R., Shroder, J. F. and Vitek, J. D., (eds). *Rock Glaciers*. Allen and Unwin, Boston. pp. 239-263.
- Vogel, C., (2000). Climate and climatic change: causes and consequences. In: Fox, R. and Rowntree, K., (eds). *The Geography of South Africa in a Changing World*. Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 284-303.
- Vortisch, W., Mahaney, W. C. and Fecher, K., (1987). Lithology and weathering in a paleosol sequence on Mount Kenya, East Africa. *Geologica et Palaeontologica*. **21**. pp. 245-255.
- Wahrhaftig, C. and Cox, A., (1959). Rock Glaciers in the Alaska Range. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America*. **70**. pp. 383-436.
- Walling, D. E., (1999). Using fallout radionuclides in investigations of contemporary overbank sedimentation on floodplains of British Rivers. In: Marriott, S. B. and Alexander, J., (eds). *Floodplains: Interdisciplinary Approaches*. Geological Society of London Special Publication. **163**. pp. 41-59.
- Walling, D. E., Woodward, J. C. and Nicolas, A. P., (1993). A multi-parameter approach to fingerprinting suspended sediment sources. In: *Tracers in Hydrology*. Proceedings of the Yokohoma Symposium, July 1993, International Association of Hydrological Sciences Publication. 215, pp. 329-338.
- Ward, S., (2004). Imbrication. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London. pp. 560.
- Warren, W. P. and Croot, D. G., (1994). *Formation and Deformation of Glacial Deposits*. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- Washburn, A. L., (1973). *Periglacial Processes and Environments*. St Martin's Press, New York.
- Washburn, A. L., (1979). *Geocryology. A Survey of Periglacial Processes and Environments*. Wiley, Chichester.
- Watchman, A. L. and Twidale, C. R., (2002). Relative and 'absolute' dating of land surfaces. *Earth Science Reviews*. **58**. pp. 1-49.
- Watson, E., (1966). Two nivation cirques near Aberystwyth, Wales. *Biuletyn Peryglacjalny*. **15**. pp. 79-101.

- Watson, A., Price Williams, D. and Goudie, A. S., (1984). The palaeoenvironmental interpretation of colluvial sediments and palaeosols of the Late Pleistocene Hypothermal in southern Africa. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology and Palaeoecology*. **45**. pp. 225-249.
- Wentworth, C. K., (1922). A scale of grade and class terms for clastic sediments. *Journal of Geology*. **15**. pp. 39-140
- Wentworth, C. K., (1943). Soil avalanches on Oahu, Hawaii. *Geological Society America Bulletin*. **54**. pp. 53-64.
- Wenzens, G., (1999). Fluctuations of outlet and valley glaciers in the Southern Andes (Argentina) during the past 13 000 yrs. *Quaternary Research*. **51**. pp. 235-247.
- Whalley, W. B., (2004). Rock glacier. In: Goudie, A. S., (ed). *Encyclopedia of Geomorphology*. Routledge, London.
- Whalley, W. B. and Martin, H. E., (1992). Rock glaciers Part II: Models and mechanism. *Progress in Physical geography*. **16**. pp. 127-186.
- Whalley, W. B. and Martin, H. E., (1994). Rock glaciers in Tröllaskagi: Their origin and climatic significance. In: Stötter, J. and Wilhelm, F. (eds). *Environmental Change in Iceland*. Münchener Geographische Abhandlungen Reihe B. **12**. pp. 289-308.
- Whalley, W. B. and Azizi, F., (2003). Rock glaciers and protalus landforms: Analogues forms and ice sources on Earth and Mars. *Journal of Geophysical Research*. **108**. pp. 1-17.
- Whalley, W. B., Hamilton, S. J. and Palmer, C. F., (1995). The dynamics of rock glaciers: data from Tröllaskagi, North Iceland. In: Slaymaker, O., (ed). *Steepland Geomorphology*. Wiley, Chichester. pp. 129-145.
- Whiteman, C. A., (2002). Processes of terrestrial glacial deposition. In: Menzies, J., (ed). *Modern and Past Glacial Environments*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford. pp. 171-181.
- Whitmore, G., Uken, R. and Meth, D., (1999). *KwaZulu-Natal: 3500 Million Years of Geological History*. Richards Bay Minerals and the Geology Education Museum.
- Wilken, G. C., (1978). *Agroclimatology of Lesotho*. LASA Paper 1.
- Williams, G. P. and Guy, H. P., (1973). Erosional and depositional aspects of Hurricane Camille in Virginia, 1969. *US Geological Survey Professional Paper*. **804**.

- Wilson, P., (2004). Relict rock glaciers, slope failure deposits, or polygenetic features? A re-assessment of some Donegal debris landforms. *Irish Geography*. **37**. pp. 77-87.
- Winkler, S. and Nesje, A., (1999). Moraine formation at an advancing temperate glacier: Brigsdalsbreen, western Norway. *Geografiska Annaler*. **81A**. pp. 17-30.
- Wolman, M. G. and Leopold, L. B., (1957). River flood plains: some observations on their formation. *US Geological Survey Professional Paper*. **282-C**. pp. 87-107.
- Young, J. A. T. and Hastenrath, S., (1987). Glaciers of the Middle East and Africa – Glaciers of Africa. In. Williams, R. S. Jr. and Ferrigno, J. G., (eds). *Satellite Images of Glaciers of the World*. U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1386-G-3. pp. G49-70.
- Zalikhanov, M. Ch., (1975). Hydrological role of avalanches in the Caucasus. *International Association of Hydrological Sciences Publication*. **104**. pp. 390-394.
- Zurawek, R., (2002). Internal structure of a relict rock glacier, Ślęza Massif, Southwest Poland. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*. **13**. pp. 29-42.